

Kathleen Jensen
Niklaus Wirth

PASCAL

**USER MANUAL
AND REPORT**
FOURTH EDITION

ISO Pascal Standard

Revised by
Andrew B. Mickel
James F. Miner



Springer-Verlag

Copyrighted Material

Pascal User Manual and Report

Fourth Edition

Kathleen Jensen
Niklaus Wirth

Pascal User Manual and Report

ISO Pascal Standard

Fourth Edition, Revised by
Andrew B. Mickel
James F. Miner

With 76 Figures



Springer-Verlag
New York Berlin Heidelberg London Paris
Tokyo Hong Kong Barcelona Budapest

Kathleen Jensen
Digital Equipment Corporation
Office Automation
Reading, England RG7 3DP
United Kingdom

Andrew B. Mickel
MCAD Computer Center
2501 Stevens Ave. S.
Minneapolis, MN 55404
USA

Niklaus Wirth
Institut fuer Informatik
ETH-Zentrum
CH-8092 Zurich
Switzerland

James F. Miner
Academic Computing Services
University of Minnesota
Minneapolis, MN 55455
USA

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
Jensen, Kathleen

Pascal: user manual and report
Bibliography: p.
Includes index.
1. Pascal (Computer program language) I. Wirth,
Niklaus. II. Mickel, Andrew B. III. Miner, James F.
IV. Title.

Printed on acid-free paper.

© 1974, 1985, 1991 Springer-Verlag New York, Inc.

All rights reserved. This work may not be translated or copied in whole or in part without the written permission of the publisher (Springer-Verlag New York, Inc., 175 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10010, USA), except for brief excerpts in connection with reviews or scholarly analysis. Use in connection with any form of information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed is forbidden.

The use of general descriptive names, trade names, trademarks, etc., in this publication, even if the former are not especially identified, is not to be taken as a sign that such names, as understood by the Trade Marks and Merchandise Marks Act, may accordingly be used freely by anyone.

Illustrations by William W. Porter.

Typeset using Interleaf by Source Code Systems, Minneapolis, MN.

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

ISBN-13: 978-0-387-97649-5 e-ISBN: 978-1-4612-4450-9

DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4612-4450-9

Foreword to the Fourth Edition

We are pleased to have the opportunity in this Fourth Edition to correct typographical errors in the Third Edition as well as to bring the book in line with the recent revision of the ISO Pascal standard performed by Working Group 2 of ISO committee IEC JTC1/SC22 since the standard was formally approved in 1983. This revision of the ISO standard also resolved differences between it and the American (ANSI-X3/IEEE P770) standard.

The major changes affect the definition of *UnsignedReal*, textfiles, the procedure Read, and complying processors.

We should note that, as this edition goes to press, a new “Extended Pascal” standard is near final approval. Extended Pascal is intended to address many complaints about limitations in the “classic” Pascal language that this book describes.

Andy Mickel and Jim Miner

Minneapolis, USA

February, 1991

Foreword to the Third Edition

For nearly a decade *Pascal User Manual and Report* has served as the standard tutorial and reference book for practicing programmers who wanted to learn and use Pascal. During the 1970’s the popularity of Pascal grew beyond anyone’s expectations and has become one of the most important computer programming languages used throughout the world. At that time in the United States, commercial use of Pascal often exceeded academic interest. Today most universities use Pascal to teach programming. Pascal is the modern alternative to PL/1 or Algol 60, and even Fortran is changing to take advantage of Pascal’s innovations.

In our work with Pascal User’s Group and *Pascal News*, we witnessed the spread of Pascal implementations to every modern com-

puter system. In 1971 one computer system had a Pascal compiler. By 1974 the number had grown to 10 and in 1979 there were more than 80. Pascal is always available on those ubiquitous breeds of computer systems: personal computers and professional workstations.

Questions arising out of the Southampton Symposium on Pascal in 1977 [Reference 10] began the first organized effort to write an officially sanctioned, international Pascal Standard. Participants sought to consolidate the list of questions that naturally arose when people tried to implement Pascal compilers using definitions found in the *Pascal User Manual and Report*. That effort culminated in the ISO 7185 Pascal Standard [Reference 11] which officially defines Pascal and necessitated the revision of this book.

We have chosen to modify the *User Manual* and the *Report* with respect to the Standard — not to make this book a substitute for the Standard. As a result this book retains much of its readability and elegance which, we believe, set it apart from the Standard. We updated the syntactic notation to Niklaus Wirth's EBNF and improved the style of programs in the *User Manual*. For the convenience of readers familiar with previous editions of this book, we have included Appendix E which summarizes the changes necessitated by the Standard.

Finally, there ought to be a note in this book that Pascal was named after the French mathematician, humanist, and religious fanatic Blaise Pascal, who built a simple calculating machine. We wish to thank Roberto Minio and Niklaus Wirth for their support of the project to revise this book. Henry Ledgard offered us much timely and consistently useful advice. Elise Oranges conscientiously facilitated production schedules. We also thank William W. Porter for his artwork and Linda Strzegowski who did the typesetting for this edition.

Andy Mickel
Jim Miner
Minneapolis, USA
November, 1984

Preface

A preliminary version of the programming language Pascal was drafted in 1968. It followed in its spirit the Algol 60 and Algol W line of languages. After an extensive development phase, a first compiler became operational in 1970, and publication followed a year later [see References 1 and 8.] The growing interest in the development of compilers for other computers called for a consolidation of Pascal, and two years of experience in the use of the language dictated a few revisions. This led in 1973 to the publication of a Revised Report and a definition of a language representation in terms of the ISO character set.

This book consists of two parts: The User Manual, and the Revised Report. The *User Manual* is directed to those who have previously acquired some familiarity with computer programming, and who wish to get acquainted with the language Pascal. Hence, the style of the *User Manual* is that of a tutorial, and many examples are included to demonstrate the various features of Pascal. Summarizing tables and syntax specifications are added as Appendices. The *Report* is included in this book to serve as a concise, ultimate reference for both programmers and implementors. It describes Standard Pascal which constitutes a common base between various implementations of the language.

The linear structure of a book is by no means ideal for introducing a language. Nevertheless, in its use as a tutorial, we recommend following the given organization of the User Manual, paying careful

attention to the example programs, and then to reread those sections which cause difficulties. In particular, one may wish to reference Chapter 12, if questions arise concerning input and output conventions.

Chapter 0–12 of the User Manual, and the entire Report, describe Standard Pascal. Implementors should regard the task of recognizing ISO Standard Pascal as the basic requirement of their systems, whereas programmers who intend their programs to be transportable from one computer system to another should use only features described as Standard Pascal. Of course, individual implementations may provide additional facilities which, however, should be clearly labelled as extensions.

The efforts of many go into the User Manual, and we especially thank the members of the Institut fuer Informatik, ETH Zurich, and John Larmouth, Rudy Schild, Olivier Lecarme, and Pierre Desjardins for their criticism, suggestions, and encouragement. Our implementation of Pascal — which made this manual both possible and necessary — is the work of Urs Ammann, aided by Helmut Sandmayr.

Kathleen Jensen

Niklaus Wirth

ETH Zurich

Switzerland

November, 1974

Table of Contents

Forewords	v
Preface	vii
Table of Contents	ix
List of Figures	xv

USER MANUAL (Pascal Tutorial)

by K. Jensen and N. Wirth

CHAPTER 0

Introduction	1
0.A. An Overview of Pascal Programs	1
0.B. Syntax Diagrams	3
0.C. EBNF	3
0.D. Scope	5
0.E. Miscellaneous	6

CHAPTER 1

Notation: Symbols and Separators	9
1.A. Separators	9
1.B. Special Symbols and Word Symbols	9
1.C. Identifiers	10
1.D. Numbers	12
1.E. Character Strings	12
1.F. Labels	13
1.G. Directives	13

CHAPTER 2

The Concept of Data: Simple Data Types	14
2.A. Ordinal Data Types	15
2.B. The Type Boolean	16
2.C. The Type Integer	17
2.D. The Type Char	18
2.E. The Type Real	19

CHAPTER 3

The Program Heading and the Declaration Part	21
3.A. Program Heading	22
3.B. Label Declaration Part	22
3.C. Constant Definition Part	23
3.D. Type Definition Part	24
3.E. Variable Declaration Part	25
3.F. Procedure and Function Declaration Part	27
3.G. Scope of Identifiers and Labels	27

CHAPTER 4

The Concept of Action	28
4.A. The Assignment Statement and Expressions	28
4.B. The Procedure Statement	33
4.C. The Compound Statement and the Empty Statement	34
4.D. Repetitive Statements	35
4.D.1 The While Statement	35
4.D.2 The Repeat Statement	35
4.D.3 The For Statement	37
4.E Conditional Statements	43
4.E.1 The If Statement	43
4.E.2 The Case Statement	46
4.F. The With Statement	47
4.G. The Goto Statement	47

CHAPTER 5

Enumerated and Subrange Types	50
5.A. Enumerated Types	50
5.B. Subrange Types	53

CHAPTER 6

Structured Types in General — Array Types in Particular	55
6.A. The Array Type	56
6.B. String Types	63
6.C. Pack and Unpack	64

CHAPTER 7

Record Types	65
---------------------------	-----------

7.A. Fixed Records	65
7.B. Variant Records	69
7.C. The With Statement	73

CHAPTER 8

Set Types	76
8.A. Set Constructors	77
8.B. Set Operations	78
8.C. On Program Development	80

CHAPTER 9

File Types	86
9.A. The File Structure	86
9.B. Textfiles	92

CHAPTER 10

Pointer Types	94
10.A. Pointer Variables and Identified (Dynamic) Variables ...	94
10.B. New and Dispose	99

CHAPTER 11

Procedures and Functions	102
11.A. Procedures	103
11.A.1 Parameter Lists	106
11.A.2 Conformant–Array Parameters	112
11.A.3 Recursive Procedures	113
11.A.4 Procedural Parameters	117
11.B. Functions	122
11.B.1 Functional Parameters	124
11.B.2 Side Effects	125
11.C. Forward Declarations	126

CHAPTER 12

Textfile Input and Output	127
12.A. The Predeclared Files Input and Output	128
12.B. The Procedures Read and Readln	133
12.C. The Procedures Write and Writeln	135
12.D. The Procedure Page	140

REPORT (Pascal Reference) by N. Wirth

1.	Introduction	142
2.	Summary of the Language	143
3.	Notation and Terminology	147
4.	Symbols and Symbol Separators	148
5.	Constants	151
6.	Types	152
	6.1 Simple Types	153
	6.1.1 Enumerated Types	154
	6.1.2 Predefined Simple Types	154
	6.1.3 Subrange Types	155
	6.2 Structured Types	155
	6.2.1 Array Types	156
	6.2.2 Record Types	156
	6.2.3 Set Types	158
	6.2.4 File Types	158
	6.3 Pointer Types	159
	6.4 Example of Type Definition Part	159
	6.5 Type Compatibility	160
7.	Variables	161
	7.1 Entire Variables	162
	7.2 Component Variables	162
	7.2.1 Indexed Variables	162
	7.2.2 Field Designators	163
	7.3 Identified Variables	163
	7.4 Buffer Variables	164
8.	Expressions	165
	8.1 Operands	165
	8.2 Operators	167
	8.2.1. Arithmetic Operators	167
	8.2.2. Boolean Operators	168
	8.2.3. Set Operators	168
	8.2.4. Relational Operators	169
9.	Statements	170
	9.1 Simple Statements	170
	9.1.1 Assignment Statements	170
	9.1.2 Procedure Statements	170

9.1.3 Goto Statements	171
9.2 Structured Statements	172
9.2.1 Compound Statements	172
9.2.2 Conditional Statements	172
9.2.3 Repetitive Statements	173
9.2.4 With Statements	176
10. Blocks, Scope, and Activations	177
10.1 Blocks	177
10.2 Scope	178
10.3 Activations	179
11. Procedures and Functions	181
11.1 Procedure Declarations	181
11.2 Function Declarations	183
11.3 Parameters	184
11.3.1 Formal Parameter Lists	185
11.3.2 Actual Parameter Lists	187
11.3.3 Parameter–List Congruity	188
11.3.4 Conformability and Conformant Types .	189
11.4 Predeclared Procedures	190
11.4.1 File Handling Procedures	190
11.4.2 Dynamic Allocation Procedures	191
11.4.3 Data Transfer Procedures	192
11.5 Predeclared Functions	192
11.5.1 Arithmetic Functions	192
11.5.2 Boolean Functions	193
11.5.3 Transfer Functions	193
11.5.4 Ordinal Functions	193
12. Textfile Input and Output	194
12.1 Read	194
12.1.1 Char Read	195
12.1.2 Integer Read	195
12.1.3 Real Read	195
12.2 Readln	195
12.3 Write	196
12.3.1 Char Write	197
12.3.2 Integer Write	197
12.3.3 Real Write	197
12.3.4 Boolean Write	198

12.3.5 String Write	198
12.4 Writeln	198
12.5 Page	199
13. Programs	199
14. Compliance with ISO 7185	200
 References	 202
 APPENDIX A Predeclared Procedures and Functions ...	 204
 APPENDIX B Summary of Operators	 208
Operator Precedence in Expressions	209
Other Operations	209
 APPENDIX C Tables	 210
Table of Standard Identifiers	211
Table of Symbols	212
 APPENDIX D Syntax	 213
Collected EBNF: Hierarchical	215
Cross Reference of EBNF Indexed To Report	221
Collected EBNF: Alphabetical	225
Syntax Diagrams	230
 APPENDIX E Summary of Changes to Pascal User Manual and Report Necessitated by the ISO 7185 Standard....	 240
 APPENDIX F Programming Examples	 242
 APPENDIX G ASCII Character Set	 247
 Index to Programs, Program Fragments, and Program Schemata	 249
 Index	 254

List of Figures

0.a	Syntax diagram for <i>Program</i>	4
0.b	Syntax diagram for <i>Block</i>	4
0.c	Block Structure	5
1.a	Syntax diagram for <i>Letter</i>	11
1.b	Syntax diagram for <i>Digit</i>	11
1.c	Syntax diagram for <i>Identifier</i>	11
1.d	Syntax diagram for <i>UnsignedInteger</i> and <i>DigitSequence</i>	12
1.e	Syntax diagram for <i>UnsignedNumber</i>	12
1.f	Syntax diagram for <i>CharacterString</i>	13
1.g	Syntax diagram for <i>Directive</i>	13
2.a	Type Taxonomy of Data Types	14
2.b	Type Taxonomy of Simple Data Types	15
2.c	Syntax diagram for <i>SimpleType</i>	15
2.d	Syntax diagram for <i>OrdinalType</i>	16
3.a	Syntax diagram for <i>Program</i>	21
3.b	Syntax diagram for <i>Block</i>	21
3.c	Syntax diagram for <i>StatementPart</i>	22
3.d	Syntax diagram for <i>ProgramHeading</i>	22
3.e	Syntax diagram for <i>LabelDeclarationPart</i>	22
3.f	Syntax diagram for <i>ConstantDefinitionPart</i>	23
3.g	Syntax diagram for <i>Constant</i>	23
3.h	Syntax diagram for <i>TypeDefinitionPart</i>	24
3.i	Syntax diagram for <i>Type</i>	24
3.j	Syntax diagram for <i>VariableDeclarationPart</i>	25
4.a	Syntax diagram for <i>Statement</i>	29
4.b	Syntax diagram for <i>AssignmentStatement</i>	29
4.c	Syntax diagram for <i>Variable</i>	30
4.d	Syntax diagram for <i>Factor</i>	30
4.e	Syntax diagram for <i>UnsignedConstant</i>	31
4.f	Syntax diagram for <i>Term</i>	31
4.g	Syntax diagram for <i>SimpleExpression</i>	31
4.h	Syntax diagram for <i>Expression</i>	32
4.i	Syntax diagram for <i>CompoundStatement</i>	34
4.j	Syntax diagram for <i>WhileStatement</i>	35
4.k	Syntax diagram for <i>RepeatStatement</i>	35
4.l	Syntax diagram for <i>ForStatement</i>	38
4.m	Syntax diagram for <i>IfStatement</i>	43
4.n	Syntax diagram for <i>CaseStatement</i>	46
4.o	Syntax diagram for <i>GotoStatement</i>	47

xvi List of Figures

5.a	Syntax diagram for <i>EnumeratedType</i>	50
5.b	Syntax diagram for <i>SubrangeType</i>	53
6.a	Type Taxonomy of Structured Data Types	55
6.b	Syntax diagram for <i>StructuredType</i>	56
6.c	Syntax diagram for <i>ComponentVariable</i>	57
6.d	Syntax diagram for <i>ArrayType</i>	61
7.a	Syntax diagram for <i>RecordType</i>	66
7.b	Syntax diagram for <i>FieldList</i>	66
7.c	Syntax diagram for <i>FixedPart</i>	66
7.d	Syntax diagram for <i>RecordSection</i>	66
7.e	Syntax diagram for <i>VariantPart</i>	70
7.f	Syntax diagram for <i>Variant</i>	70
7.g	Two Sample People	71
7.h	Syntax diagram for <i>WithStatement</i>	73
8.a	Syntax diagram for <i>SetType</i>	76
8.b	Syntax diagram for <i>SetConstructor</i>	77
9.a	Syntax diagram for <i>FileType</i>	87
9.b	Syntax diagram for <i>BufferVariable</i>	87
10.a	Syntax diagram for <i>PointerType</i>	95
10.b	Syntax diagram for <i>IdentifiedVariable</i>	95
10.c	Linked List	98
10.d	Linked List Before Insertion	100
10.e	Linked List After Insertion	100
11.a	Syntax diagram for <i>ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart</i>	102
11.b	Syntax diagram for <i>ProcedureOrFunctionHeading</i>	102
11.c	Syntax diagram for <i>ProcedureHeading</i>	103
11.d	Syntax diagram for <i>ProcedureStatement</i>	106
11.e	Syntax diagram for <i>FormalParameterList</i>	109
11.f	Syntax diagram for <i>ActualParameterList</i>	109
11.g	Syntax diagram for <i>ConformantArraySchema</i>	112
11.h	Syntax diagram for <i>IndexTypeSpecification</i>	112
11.i	Binary Tree Structure	118
11.j	Syntax diagram for <i>FunctionHeading</i>	122
12.a	Syntax diagram for <i>WriteParameterList</i>	136
12.b	Formatted Write Examples	138
C.a	Complete Type Taxonomy of Data Types	210
D.a	Collected Syntax Diagrams	230

USER MANUAL

CHAPTER 0

Introduction

0.A. An Overview of Pascal Programs

Much of the following text assumes that you, the reader, have a minimal grasp of computer terminology and a “feeling” for the structure of a program. The purpose of this section is to spark your intuition.

An *algorithm* or computer program consists of two essential parts, a description of *actions* that are to be performed, and a description of the data, that are manipulated by these actions. Actions are described by so-called *statements*, and data are described by so-called *declarations* and *definitions*.

The program is divided into a *heading* and a body, called a *block*. The heading gives the program a name and lists its parameters. These are (file) variables and represent the arguments and results of the computation. The block consists of six sections, where any except the last may be empty. They must appear in the order given in the definition for a block:

```
Block =  LabelDeclarationPart
        ConstantDefinitionPart
        TypeDefinitionPart
        VariableDeclarationPart
        ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart
        StatementPart .
```

2 Pascal User Manual

An Example Program

```
program Inflation(Output);

{ Assuming annual inflation rates of 7%, 8%, and 10%,
  find the factor by which any unit of currency such as
  the franc, dollar, pound sterling, mark, ruble, yen,
  guilder will have been devalued in 1, 2,...,n years.}

const
  MaxYears = 10;
var
  Year: 0..MaxYears;
  Factor1, Factor2, Factor3: Real;
begin
  Year := 0;
  Factor1 := 1.0;  Factor2 := 1.0;  Factor3 := 1.0;
  Writeln(' Year      7%      8%      10%');  Writeln;
  repeat
    Year := Year + 1;
    Factor1 := Factor1 * 1.07;
    Factor2 := Factor2 * 1.08;
    Factor3 := Factor3 * 1.10;
    Writeln(Year: 5, Factor1: 7:3, Factor2: 7:3
            Factor3 :7:3)
  until Year = MaxYears
end .
```

Produces as results:

Year	7%	8%	10%
1	1.070	1.080	1.100
2	1.145	1.166	1.210
3	1.225	1.260	1.331
4	1.311	1.360	1.464
5	1.403	1.469	1.611
6	1.501	1.587	1.772
7	1.606	1.714	1.949
8	1.718	1.851	2.144
9	1.838	1.999	2.358
10	1.967	2.159	2.594

The first section lists all labels defined in this block. The second section defines synonyms for constants; i.e., it introduces “constant identifiers” that may later be used in place of those constants. The third contains type definitions; and the fourth, variable definitions. The fifth section defines subordinate program parts (i.e., procedures and functions). The statement part specifies the actions to be taken.

0.B. Syntax Diagrams

The previous program outline is more graphically expressed in a *syntax diagram*. Starting at the diagram for *Program* (Figure 0.a), a path through the diagram defines a syntactically correct program. Each rectangular box references a diagram by that name, which is then used to define its meaning. Terminal symbols (those actually written in a Pascal program) are in rounded enclosures. (See Appendix D for the complete set of diagrams for Pascal.)

0.C. EBNF

An alternative method for describing syntax is the *Extended Backus–Naur Form*, (EBNF), where syntactic constructs are denoted by English words and literals. These words are suggestive of the nature or meaning of the construct while the literals denote actual symbols used in writing the language. Literals are enclosed in quotation marks.

Enclosure of a sequence of constructs and literals by the metasymbols { and } implies its occurrence zero or more times. Alternatives are separated by the metasymbol |. Parentheses (and) are used for grouping and the metasymbols [and] denote that the enclosed constructs and literals are optional. (A complete explanation of EBNF and the EBNF of Pascal is given in Appendix D.) As an example, the construct *Program* of Figure 0.a is defined by the following EBNF formulas called *productions*.

Program = *ProgramHeading* “;” *Block* “.”.

ProgramHeading = “program” *Identifier* [(“*IdentifierList* ”)].

IdentifierList = *Identifier* {“,” *Identifier*}.

4 Pascal User Manual

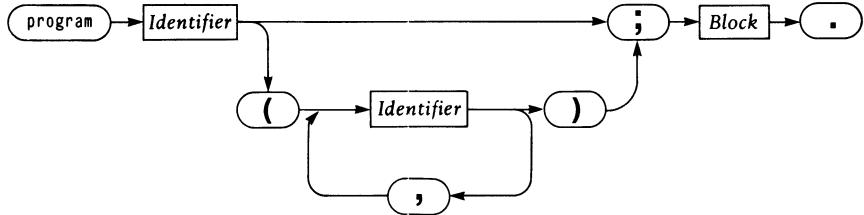


Figure 0.a Syntax diagram for *Program*

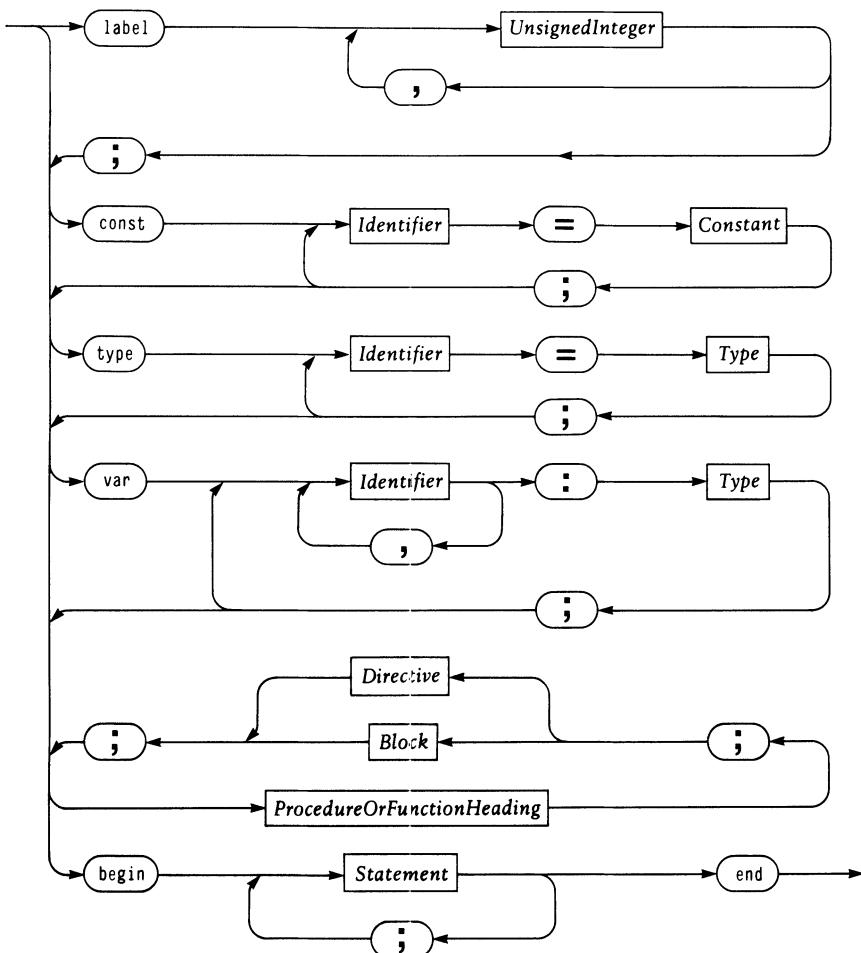


Figure 0.b Syntax Diagram for *Block*

0.D. Scope

Each procedure and function declaration has a structure similar to a program; i.e., each consists of a heading and a block. Hence, procedure and function declarations may be nested within other procedures or functions. Labels, constant synonyms, type, variable, procedure, and function declarations are *local* to the procedure or function in which they are declared. That is, their identifiers have significance only within the program text that constitutes the block. This region of program text is called the *scope* of these identifiers. Since blocks may be nested, so may scopes. Objects that are declared in the main program, i.e., not local to some procedure or function, are called *global* and have significance throughout the entire program.

Since blocks may be nested within other blocks by procedure and function declarations, one is able to assign a level of nesting to each. If the outermost program-defined block (e.g., the main program) is called level 0, then a block defined within this block would be of level 1; in general, a block defined in level 1 would be of level (i+1). Figure 0.c illustrates a block structure.

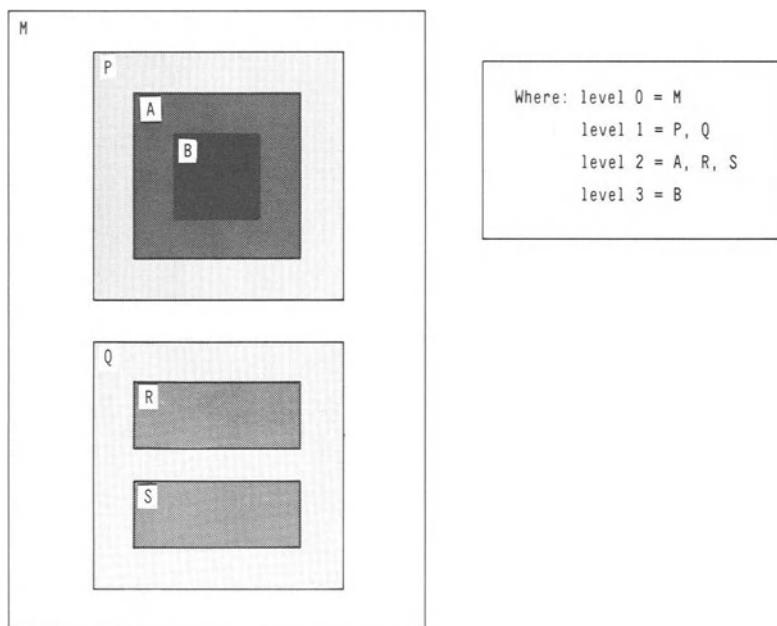


Figure 0.c Block structure

6 Pascal User Manual

This block structure could represent the following program skeleton:

```
program M;
  procedure P;
    procedure A;
      procedure B;
      begin
        end { B };
      begin
        end { A };
    begin
    end { P };
  procedure Q;
    procedure R;
    begin
    end { R };
    procedure S;
    begin
    end { S };
  begin
  end { Q };
begin
end { M }.
```

In terms of this formulation the scope or range of validity of an identifier x is the entire block in which x is defined, including those blocks defined in the same block as x . (For this example, note that all identifiers must be distinct. Section 3.G discusses the case where identifiers are not necessarily distinct.)

block	may access objects in blocks
M	M
P	P, M
A	A, P, M
B	B, A, P, M
Q	Q, M
R	R, Q, M
S	S, Q, M

0.E. Miscellaneous

For programmers acquainted with Algol, PL/I, or Fortran, it may prove helpful to glance at Pascal in terms of these other languages. For this

purpose, we list the following characteristics of Pascal:

1. Declaration of variables is mandatory.
2. Certain key words (e.g., begin, end, repeat) are “reserved” and cannot be used as identifiers.
3. The semicolon (;) is considered as a statement separator.
4. The standard data types are those of whole and real numbers, the logical values, and the (printable) characters. The basic data structuring facilities include the array, the record (corresponding to Cobol’s and PL/I’s “structure”), the set, and the (sequential) file. These structures can be combined and nested to form arrays of sets, files of records, etc. Data may be allocated dynamically and accessed via pointers. These pointers allow the full generality of list processing. There is a facility to declare new, basic data types with symbolic constants.
5. The set data structure offers facilities similar to the PL/I “bit string”.
6. Arrays may be of arbitrary dimension with arbitrary bounds; the array bounds are constant (i.e., there are no dynamic arrays.)
7. As in Fortran, Algol, and PL/I, there is a goto statement. Labels are unsigned integers and must be declared.
8. The compound statement is that of Algol, and corresponds to the DO group in PL/I.
9. The facilities of the Algol switch and the computed goto of Fortran are represented by the case statement.
10. The for statement, corresponding to the DO loop of Fortran, may only have steps of 1 (to) or -1 (downto) and is executed only as long as the value of the control variable lies within the limits. Consequently, the controlled statement might not be executed at all.
11. There are no conditional expressions and no multiple assignments.

8 Pascal User Manual

12. Procedures and functions may be called recursively.
13. There is no “own” attribute for variables (as in Algol).
14. Parameters are passed either by value or by reference; there is no “call by name.”
15. The “block structure” differs from that of Algol and PL/I insofar as there are no anonymous blocks; i.e., each block is given a name and thereby is made into a procedure or function.
16. All objects — constants, variables, etc. — must be declared *before* they are referenced. The following two exceptions are however allowed:
 - a. the type identifier in a pointer type definition
(Chapter 10)
 - b. procedure and function identifiers when there is a forward declaration (Section 11.C).
17. The conformant–array parameter offers facilities similar to the Fortran “adjustable dimension” array argument.

Upon first contact with Pascal, some programmers tend to bemoan the absence of certain “favorite features.” Examples include an exponentiation operator, concatenation of strings, dynamic arrays, arithmetic operations on Boolean values, automatic type conversions, and default declarations. These were not oversights, but deliberate omissions. In some cases their presence would be primarily an invitation to inefficient programming solutions; in others, it was felt that they would be contrary to the aim of clarity and reliability and “good programming style.” Finally, a rigorous selection among the immense variety of programming facilities available had to be made in order to keep Pascal compilers relatively compact and efficient — efficient and economical for both the user who writes only small programs using a few constructions of the language and the user who writes large programs and tends to make use of the full language.

CHAPTER 1

Notation: Symbols and Separators

Pascal programs are represented by symbols and symbol separators. Pascal symbols include *special symbols*, *word symbols*, identifiers, numbers, character strings, labels, and directives. *Symbol separators* are explained in the next section.

1.A. Separators

Blanks, ends-of-lines (line separators), and comments are considered as symbol separators. No part of a separator can occur within a Pascal symbol. You must use at least one separator between two consecutive identifiers, word-symbols, or numbers.

A *comment* begins with either { or (* (not inside a character string) and ends with either a } or *). A comment may contain any sequence of end-of-lines and characters except } or *). A comment may be replaced with a space in the program text without altering its meaning.

Often you can improve the readability of a Pascal program by inserting blanks, end-of-lines (blank lines), and comments in it.

1.B. Special Symbols and Word Symbols

Here are the lists of special symbols and word symbols used to write Pascal programs. Note that two-character special symbols are written without any intervening separators.

10 Pascal User Manual

Here are the special symbols:

+	-	*	/		
.	,	:	;		
=	<>	<	<=	>	>=
:=	..	↑			
()	[]		

Alternative special symbols:

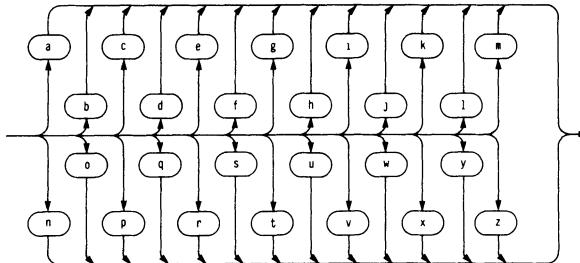
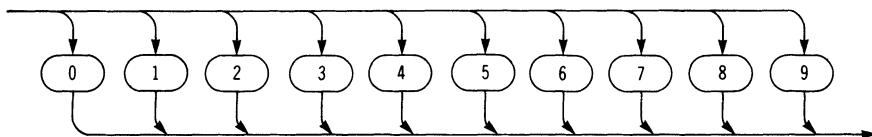
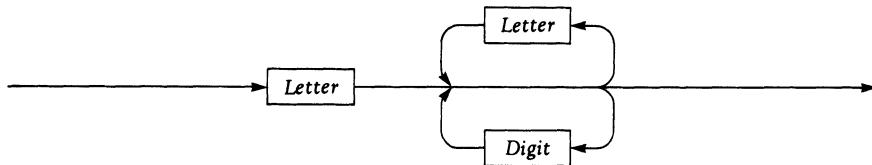
(.	for [
.)	for]
@ or ^	for ↑

Word symbols (or reserved words) are normally underlined in the hand-written program to emphasize their interpretation as single symbols with fixed meaning. You may not use these words in a context other than that explicit in the definition of Pascal: in particular, these words may not be used as identifiers. They are written as a sequence of upper-case or lower-case letters (without surrounding escape characters). Here are the word-symbols:

and	end	nil	set
array	file	not	then
begin	for	of	to
case	function	or	type
const	goto	packed	until
div	if	procedure	var
do	in	program	while
downto	label	record	with
else	mod	repeat	

1.C. Identifiers

Identifiers are names denoting constants, types, bounds, variables, procedures, and functions. They must begin with a letter, which may be followed by any combination and number of letters and digits. The spelling of an identifier is significant over its whole length. Corresponding upper-case and lower-case letters are considered equivalent.

**Figure 1.a** Syntax diagram for *Letter***Figure 1.b** Syntax diagram for *Digit***Figure 1.c** Syntax diagram for *Identifier*

Examples of identifiers:

PhoneList Root3 Pi h4g X
 ThisIsAVeryLongButNeverTheLessValidIdentifier
 ThisIsAVeryLongButDifferentIdentifierThanTheOneAbove

LettersAndDigits and lettersanddigits denote the same identifier.

These are not identifiers:

3rd array level.4 Root-3 Tenth Planet

Certain identifiers, called *predeclared identifiers*, are provided automatically (e.g., `sin`, `cos`). In contrast to the word-symbols (e.g., `array`), we are not restricted to their definitions and may elect to redefine any predeclared identifiers, as they are assumed to be declared in a hypothetical block surrounding the entire program block. See Appendix C for tables listing all the predeclared identifiers in Pascal.

1.D. Numbers

Decimal notation is used for numbers, which denote either integer or real values. Any number can be preceded by a sign (+ or -); *unsigned numbers* cannot be signed. No comma may appear in a number. Real numbers are written with a decimal or scale factor or both. The letter E (or e) preceding the scale factor is pronounced as “times 10 to the power.” Note that if a real number contains a decimal point, at least one digit must precede and follow the point.

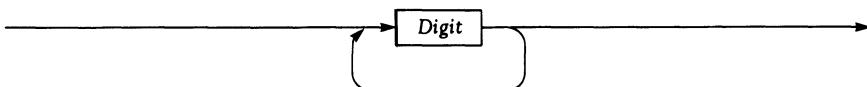


Figure 1.d Syntax diagram for *UnsignedInteger; DigitSequence*

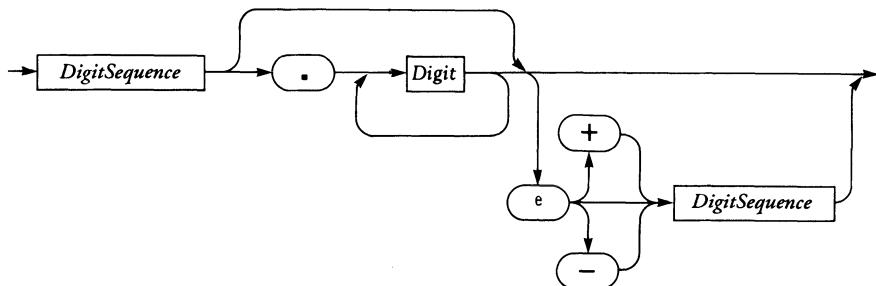


Figure 1.e Syntax diagram for *UnsignedNumber*

Examples of unsigned numbers.

3 03 6272844 0.6 5E-8 49.22E+08 1E10

Incorrectly written numbers:

3,487,159 XII .6 E10 5.E-16 five
3.487.159 3.

1.E. Character Strings

Sequences of characters enclosed by apostrophes (single quote marks) are called *strings*. To include an apostrophe in a string, write the apostrophe twice.

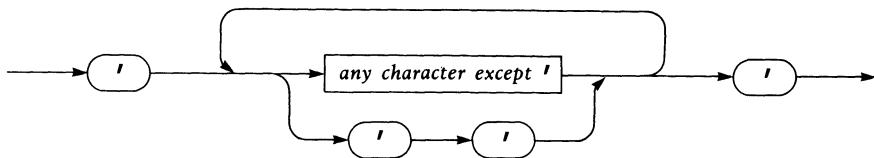


Figure 1.f Syntax diagram for *CharacterString*

Examples of strings:

```
'a'      ';'      '3'      'begin'     'don''t'  
' This string has 33 characters.'
```

1.F. Labels

Labels are unsigned integers used to mark a Pascal statement. Their apparent value must be in the range 0 to 9999.

Examples of labels:

```
13      00100      9999
```

1.G. Directives

Directives are names that substitute for procedure and function blocks. Directives have the same syntax as identifiers. (See Chapter 11.)

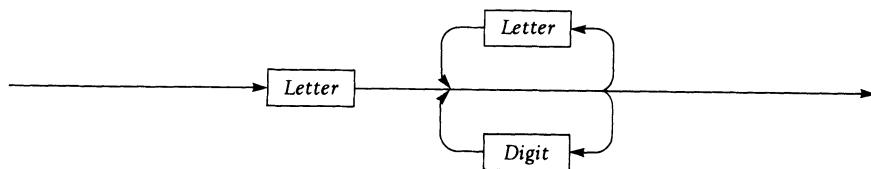


Figure 1.g Syntax diagram for *Directive*

CHAPTER 2

The Concept of Data: Simple Data Types

Data is the general term describing all that is operated on by a computer. At the hardware and machine-code levels, all data are represented as sequences of binary digits (bits). Higher-level languages allow the use of abstractions that ignore the details of representation — by developing the *data type* concept.

A data type defines the set of values a variable may assume and the operations which may be applied to it. Every variable occurring in a program is associated with one and only one type. Although data types in Pascal can be quite sophisticated, each must be ultimately built from unstructured, simple types.

Pascal also provides facilities for creating collections of data types in the form of structured types and pointer types. These types are described in Chapters 6 through 10.

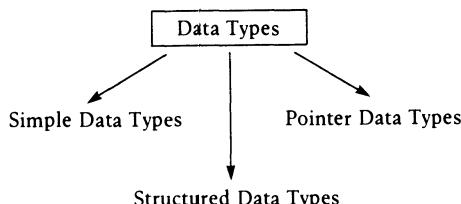


Figure 2.a Type taxonomy of data types

The two kinds of simple types in Pascal are ordinal types and the real type. An ordinal type is either defined by you (called an enumerated or subrange type) or is denoted by one of the three predefined ordinal type identifiers—Boolean, Integer, or Char. The real type is denoted by the predefined type identifier Real.

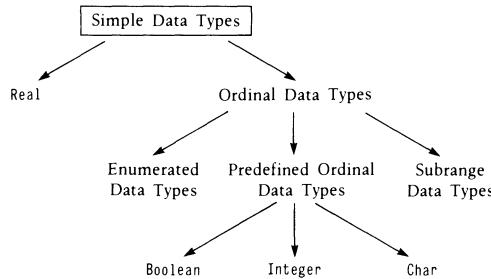


Figure 2.b Type taxonomy of simple data types

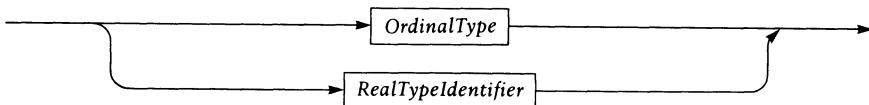


Figure 2.c Syntax diagram for *SimpleType*

An enumerated type is characterized by the set of its distinct values, upon which a linear ordering is defined. The values are denoted by identifiers in the definition of the type. A subrange type specifies a minimum and maximum value from a previously declared ordinal type to create a new ordinal type. Enumerated and subrange types are described in Chapter 5.

2.A. Ordinal Data Types

An ordinal data type describes a finite and ordered set of values. These values are mapped onto *ordinal numbers* 0, 1, 2, ..., except for the ordinal numbers of integers which are mapped onto themselves. Each ordinal type has a minimum and maximum value. Except for the minimum value, each value of an ordinal type has a *predecessor* value. Except for the maximum value, each value of an ordinal type has a *successor* value.

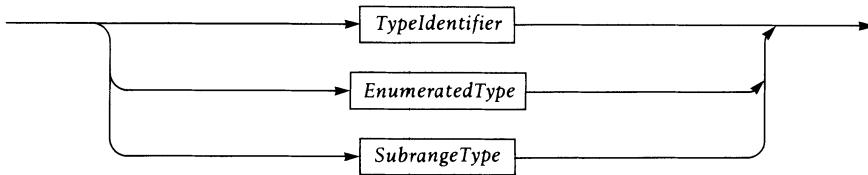


Figure 2.d Syntax diagram for *OrdinalType*

The predeclared functions `succ`, `pred`, and `ord` accept arguments of any ordinal type:

<code>succ(x)</code>	the successor of <i>x</i> ; yields the next ordinal value
<code>pred(x)</code>	the predecessor of <i>x</i> ; yields the previous ordinal value
<code>ord(x)</code>	the ordinal-number function; yields the ordinal number of <i>x</i> .

The relational operators `=`, `<>`, `<`, `<=`, `>`, and `>=` are applicable to all ordinal types provided both operands are of the same type. The order is determined by the values of the ordinal numbers underlying the operands.

2.B The Type Boolean

A Boolean value is one of the logical truth values denoted by the predefined identifiers `false` and `true`.

These logical operators yield a Boolean value when applied to Boolean operands: (Appendix B summarizes all operators.)

<code>and</code>	logical conjunction
<code>or</code>	logical disjunction
<code>not</code>	logical negation

Each of the relational operators (`=`, `<>`, `<=`, `<`, `>`, `>=`, `in`) yields a Boolean result. “`<>`” denotes inequality. Furthermore, the type `Boolean` is defined such that `false < true`. Hence, it is possible to define each of the 16 Boolean operations using the above logical and relational operators. For example, if `P` and `Q` are Boolean values, one can express

implication	as	$P \leq Q$
equivalence	as	$P = Q$
exclusive or	as	$P \neq Q$

Predeclared Boolean functions — i.e., predeclared functions which yield a Boolean result — are:

odd(I)	true if the integer I is odd, false otherwise.
eoln(F)	end of a line, explained in Chapter 9.
eof(F)	end of file, explained in Chapter 9.

(Appendix A summarizes all predeclared functions.)

2.C. The Type Integer

A value of type `Integer` is an element of an implementation-defined subset of whole numbers. The following arithmetic operators yield an integer value when applied to integer operands:

*	multiply
div	divide and truncate (i.e., value is not rounded)
mod	modulus: <code>let Remainder = A - (A div B) * B;</code> <code>if Remainder < 0 then A mod B = Remainder+B</code> <code>otherwise A mod B = Remainder</code>
+	add
-	subtract

An implementation-defined, predefined constant identifier `MaxInt` specifies the largest integer value allowable for all integer operations. If `A` and `B` are integer expressions, then the operation:

`A op B`

is guaranteed to be correctly implemented when:

<code>abs(A op B) <= MaxInt,</code>
<code>abs(A) <= MaxInt, and</code>
<code>abs(B) <= MaxInt</code>

Four predeclared functions yielding integer results are:

- `abs(I)` the absolute value of the integer value `I`.
- `sqr(I)` the integer value `I` squared,
assuming `I <= MaxInt div I`.
- `trunc(R)` `R` is a real value: the result is its whole part.
(The fractional part is discarded. Hence
`trunc(3.7) = 3` and `trunc(-3.7) = -3`).
- `round(R)` `R` is a real value: the result is the rounded integer.
`round(R)` for `R >= 0` means `trunc(R + 0.5)`
and for `R < 0` means `trunc(R - 0.5)`.

If `I` is an integer value, then

- `succ(I)` yields the “next” integer (`I + 1`), and
- `pred(I)` yields the preceding integer (`I - 1`).

2.D. The Type Char

A value of type `Char` is an element of a finite and ordered set of characters. Every computer system defines such a set for the purpose of communication. These characters are then available on the input and output equipment. Unfortunately, one standard character set does not exist; therefore, the elements and their ordering is strictly implementation-defined. (See Appendix G.)

A character enclosed in apostrophes (single quotes) denotes a value of this type. (To represent an apostrophe, write it twice.) However, it is possible that some character values have no constant representation.

Examples:

'*' 'G' '3' '"/' 'X'

The following minimal assumptions hold for the type `Char`, independent of the underlying implementation:

1. The decimal digits '`0`' through '`9`' are numerically ordered and consecutive (e.g., `succ('5') = '6'`).

2. Upper-case letters 'A' through 'Z' may exist; if so, they are alphabetically ordered, but not necessarily consecutive (e.g., 'A' < 'B').
3. Lower-case letters 'a' through 'z' may exist; if so, they are alphabetically ordered, but not necessarily consecutive (e.g., 'a' < 'b').

The predeclared functions `ord` and `chr` allow the mapping of the character set onto the ordinal numbers of the character set — and vice versa; `ord` and `chr` are called *transfer functions*.

`ord(C)` is the ordinal number of the character `C` in the underlying ordered character set.

`chr(I)` is the character value with the ordinal number `I`.

You can see immediately that `ord` and `chr` are inverse functions, i.e.,

$$\text{chr}(\text{ord}(C)) = C \quad \text{and} \quad \text{ord}(\text{chr}(I)) = I$$

Furthermore, the ordering of a given character set is defined by

$$C_1 < C_2 \quad \text{iff} \quad \text{ord}(C_1) < \text{ord}(C_2)$$

This definition can be extended to each of the relational operators: `=`, `<>`, `<`, `<=`, `>=`, `>`. If `R` denotes one of these operators, then

$$C_1 R C_2 \quad \text{iff} \quad \text{ord}(C_1) R \text{ord}(C_2)$$

When the argument of the predeclared functions `pred` and `succ` is of type `Char`, the functions can be defined as:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{pred}(C) &= \text{chr}(\text{ord}(C)-1) \\ \text{succ}(C) &= \text{chr}(\text{ord}(C)+1) \end{aligned}$$

Note: The predecessor (successor) of a character is dependent upon the underlying character set. The two properties hold only if the predecessor or successor exists.

2.E. The Type `Real`

A value of type `Real` is an element of the implementation-defined subset of real numbers.

20 Pascal User Manual

All operations on values of type `Real` are approximations, the accuracy of which is defined by the implementation (machine) that you are using. `Real` is the only simple type that is not an ordinal type. Real values have no ordinal numbers, and for any real value there is no successor or predecessor value.

As long as at least one of the operands is of type `Real` (the other possibly being of type `Integer`) the following operators yield a real value:

- * multiply
- / divide (both operands may be integers, but the result is always real)
- + add
- subtract

These predeclared functions accept a real argument and yield a real result:

<code>abs (R)</code>	absolute value of R
<code>sqr (R)</code>	R squared, if the resulting value doesn't exceed the range of real numbers

These predeclared functions accept a real or integer argument and yield a real result:

<code>sin (X)</code>	sine of X, X in radians
<code>cos (X)</code>	cosine of X, X in radians
<code>arctan (X)</code>	arc tangent in radians of X
<code>ln (X)</code>	natural logarithm (to the base e) of X, X > 0
<code>exp (X)</code>	exponential function (e raised to the X)
<code>sqrt (X)</code>	square root of X, X >= 0.

Warning: Although `real` is included as a simple type, it cannot always be used in the same context as the other simple types (i.e., ordinal types). In particular, the functions `pred` and `succ` cannot take real arguments; and values of type `Real` cannot be used when indexing arrays, nor in controlling for statements, nor for defining the base type of a set. Furthermore reals cannot be used in a subrange type nor to index a case statement.

CHAPTER 3

The Program Heading and the Declaration Part

Every program consists of a heading and a block. The block contains a declaration part, in which all objects local to the program are defined, and a statement part, which specifies the actions to be executed upon these objects.

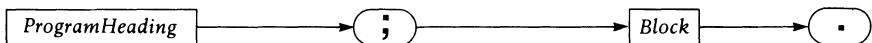


Figure 3.a Syntax diagram for *Program*

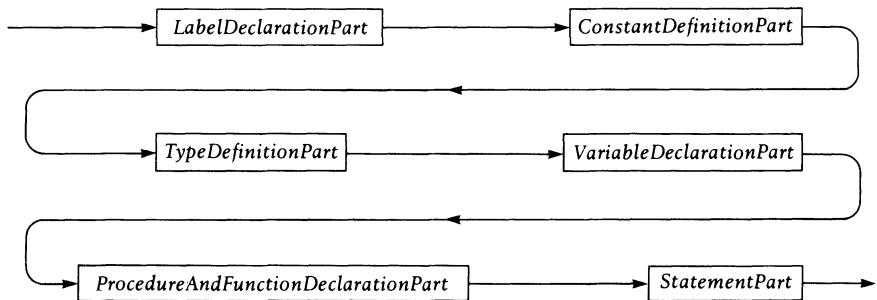


Figure 3.b Syntax diagram for *Block*

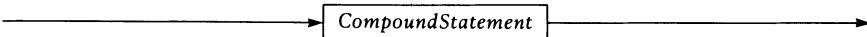


Figure 3.c Syntax diagram for *StatementPart*

3.A. Program Heading

The heading gives the program a name (not otherwise significant inside the program) and lists its parameters that denote entities that exist outside the program and through which the program communicates with the environment. The entities (usually files — see Chapter 9) are called *external*. Each parameter must be declared in the block constituting the program, just as an ordinary local variable (see Section E.).

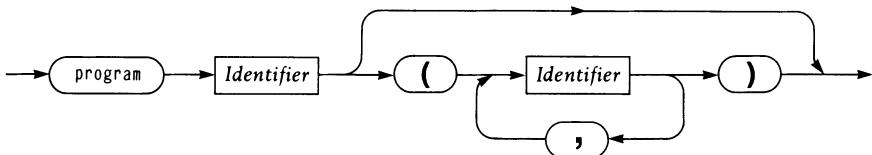


Figure 3.d Syntax diagram for *ProgramHeading*

3.B. Label Declaration Part

Any statement in a program may be marked by prefixing the statement with a label followed by a colon (making possible a reference by a goto statement). However, the label must be declared in the *label declaration part* before its use. The symbol `label` heads this part, which has the general form:

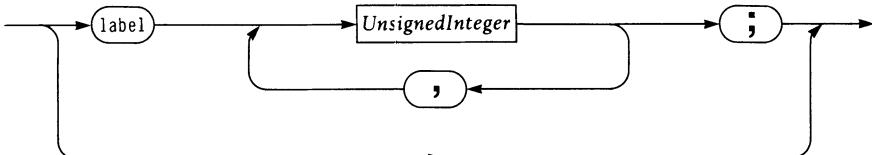


Figure 3.e Syntax diagram for *LabelDeclarationPart*

A label is defined to be an unsigned integer, with a value in the range 0 to 9999.

Example:

```
label 13, 00100, 99;
```

3.C. Constant Definition Part

A *constant definition* introduces an identifier as a synonym for a constant. The symbol `const` heads the constant definition part, which has the general form:

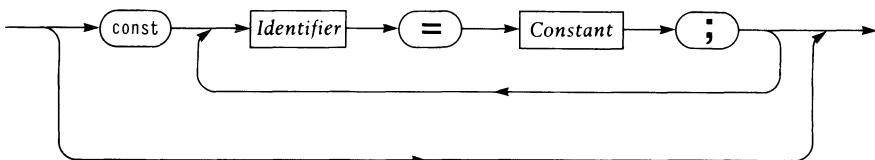


Figure 3.f Syntax diagram for *ConstantDefinitionPart*

where a constant is either a number, a constant identifier (possibly signed), a character, or a string.

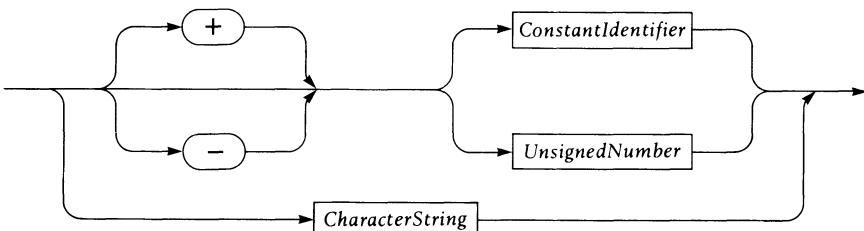


Figure 3.g Syntax diagram for *Constant*

The use of constant identifiers generally makes a program more readable and acts as a convenient documentation aid. It also allows you to group machine- or example-dependent quantities at the beginning of the program where they can be easily noted and changed or both. This improves the portability and modularity of the program.

Example:

```
const
  Avogadro  = 6.023E23;
  PageLength = 60;
  Border     = '# * ';
  MyMove     = True;
```

3.D. Type Definition Part

A data type in Pascal may be either directly described in a variable declaration (see below) or referenced by a *type identifier*. There are some places in Pascal where a type may be represented only by a type identifier. Pascal provides not only several standard type identifiers, but also a mechanism, the *type definition*, for introducing a new type identifier to represent a type. The symbol `type` heads a program part containing type definitions. The general form is:

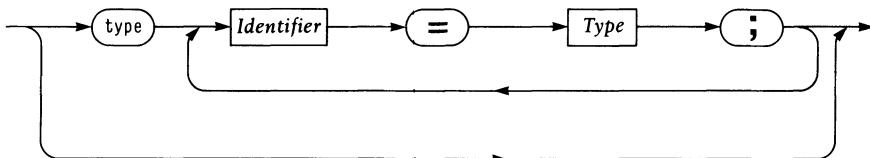


Figure 3.h Syntax diagram for *TypeDefinitionPart*

Note that *Type* represents a simple type, structured type, or pointer-type, and consists of either a type-identifier denoting an existing type or else a new type description.

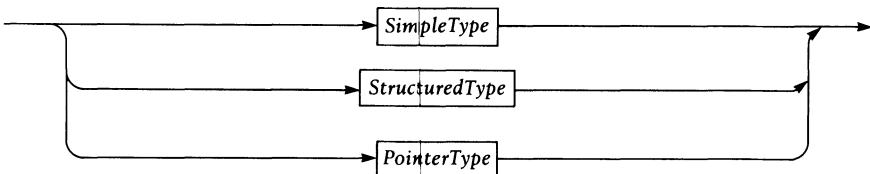


Figure 3.i Syntax diagram for *Type*

Examples of type definitions are found throughout the remainder of the User Manual.

3.E. Variable Declaration Part

Every variable identifier occurring in a program must be introduced in a *variable declaration*. This declaration must textually precede any use of the variable, unless the variable is a program parameter.

A variable declaration introduces a variable identifier and its associated data type by simply listing the identifier followed by the type. The symbol `var` heads the variable declaration part. The general form is:

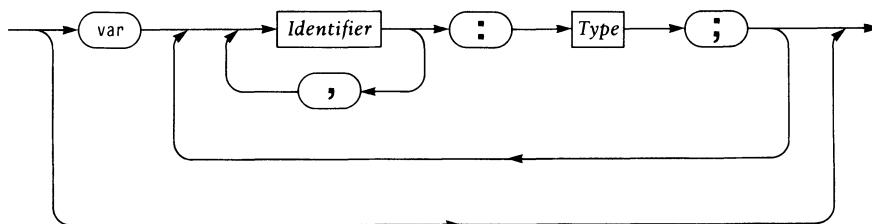


Figure 3.j Syntax diagram for *VariableDeclarationPart*

Example:

```

var Root1, Root2, Root3: Real;
  Count, I: Integer;
  Found: Boolean;
  Filler: Char;
  
```

Any identifier (denoting an external entity — usually a file) listed in the program heading parameter list except `Input` or `Output` must be declared in the program's variable declaration part. `Input` or `Output`, if listed, are automatically declared to be textfiles (see Chapter 9).

```

program TemperatureConversion(Output);
  { Program 3.1 - Example program illustrating constant
  and type definition and variable declaration parts. }

  const
    Bias = 32;  Factor = 1.8;  Low = -20;  High = 39;
    Separator = '---';  Blanks = ' ';
  type
    CelciusRange = Low..High
      { a subrange type-see Chapter 5 };
  
```

26 Pascal User Manual

```
var
  Degree: CelciusRange;
begin
  for Degree := Low to High do
    begin
      Write(Output, Degree, ' C', Separator);
      Write(Output, Round(Degree*Factor + Bias), ' F');
      if odd(Degree) then Writeln(Output)
      else Write(Output, Blanks)
    end;
  Writeln(Output)
end .
```

Produces as results:

-20 C	---	-4 F	---	-19 C	---	-2 F
-18 C	---	0 F	---	-17 C	---	1 F
-16 C	---	3 F	---	-15 C	---	5 F
-14 C	---	7 F	---	-13 C	---	9 F
-12 C	---	10 F	---	-11 C	---	12 F
-10 C	---	14 F	---	-9 C	---	16 F
-8 C	---	18 F	---	-7 C	---	19 F
-6 C	---	21 F	---	-5 C	---	23 F
-4 C	---	25 F	---	-3 C	---	27 F
-2 C	---	28 F	---	-1 C	---	30 F
0 C	---	32 F	---	1 C	---	34 F
2 C	---	36 F	---	3 C	---	37 F
4 C	---	39 F	---	5 C	---	41 F
6 C	---	43 F	---	7 C	---	45 F
8 C	---	46 F	---	9 C	---	48 F
10 C	---	50 F	---	11 C	---	52 F
12 C	---	54 F	---	13 C	---	55 F
14 C	---	57 F	---	15 C	---	59 F
16 C	---	61 F	---	17 C	---	63 F
18 C	---	64 F	---	19 C	---	66 F
20 C	---	68 F	---	21 C	---	70 F
22 C	---	72 F	---	23 C	---	73 F
24 C	---	75 F	---	25 C	---	77 F
26 C	---	79 F	---	27 C	---	81 F
28 C	---	82 F	---	29 C	---	84 F
30 C	---	86 F	---	31 C	---	88 F
32 C	---	90 F	---	33 C	---	91 F
34 C	---	93 F	---	35 C	---	95 F
36 C	---	97 F	---	37 C	---	99 F
38 C	---	100 F	---	39 C	---	102 F

3.F. Procedure and Function Declaration Part

Every procedure or function identifier must be declared before its use. Procedure and function declarations take the same form as a program — a heading followed by a block — see Chapter 11 for details and examples. Procedures are subprograms that are activated by procedure statements. Functions are subprograms that yield a result value, and are used as constituents of expressions.

3.G. Scope of Identifiers and Labels

The declaration or definition of an identifier (constant, type, variable, procedure, or function identifier) or label holds for the entire block containing the definition or declaration, except for any *nested* (subordinate) block in which the identifier or label is redeclared or redefined. The region over which the declaration or definition of an identifier or label applies is called the scope of that identifier or label.

An identifier or label declared or defined in the program block is said to be *global*. An identifier or label is said to be *local* to the block where it is declared or defined. An identifier or label is *non-local* to a block if it is declared or defined in an enclosing block. See Section 0.D for examples.

You cannot declare a single identifier more than once within the same level and scope. Hence the following is incorrect:

Example of incorrect variable declaration part:

```
var  X: Integer;  
     X: Char;
```

CHAPTER 4

The Concept of Action

Essential to a computer program is action. That is, a program must do something with its data — even if that action is the choice of doing nothing! *Statements* describe these actions. Statements are either *simple* (e.g., the assignment statement) or *structured*. See the syntax diagram for *Statement* (Figure 4.a).

4.A. The Assignment Statement and Expressions

The most fundamental of statements is the *assignment statement*. It specifies that a newly computed value, specified by an expression, be assigned to a variable. Assignment statements have the form shown in Figure 4.b. The `:=` symbol denotes *assignment* and is not to be confused with the relational operator `=`. The statement “`A := 5`” is read “the current value of `A` is replaced with the value 5,” or simply, “`A becomes 5`.”

A *variable* (see Figure 4.c) may be an *entire variable* representing all the data storage for a simple, structured, or pointer type. In the case of structured types (see Chapters 6 through 9), a variable may be a *component variable* or a *buffer variable* representing one component of the data storage. For pointer types, a variable may be an *identified variable* representing data storage indirectly referenced by a pointer.

An *expression* consists of operators and operands. An operand may be a constant, variable, array-parameter bound (discussed in Chapter

11), or function designator. (A function designator specifies activation of a function. Predeclared functions are listed in Appendix A; user-declared functions are explained in Chapter 11.)

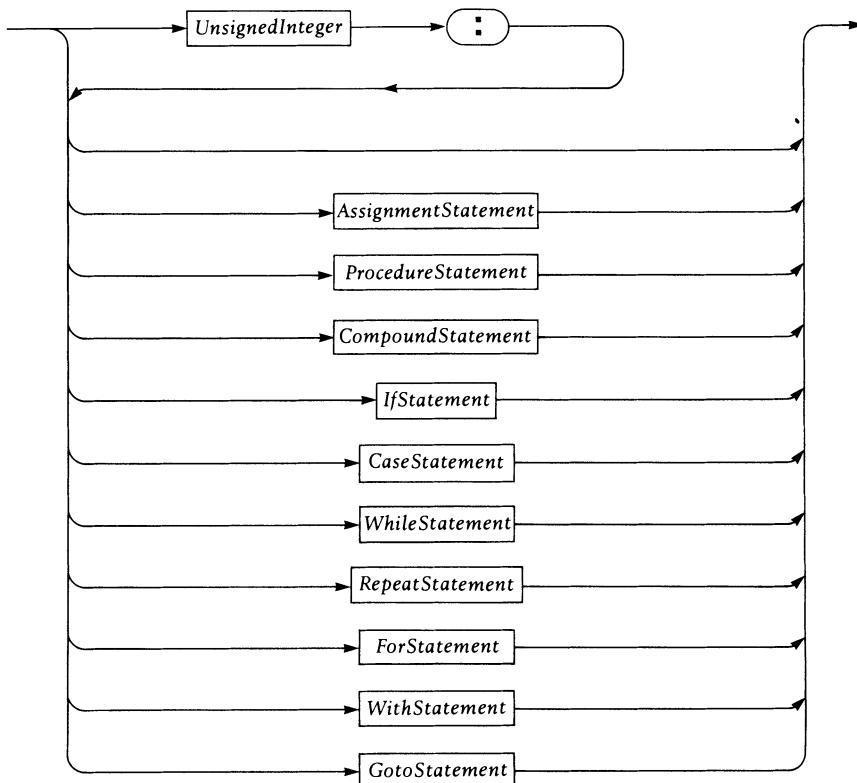


Figure 4.a Syntax diagram for *Statement*

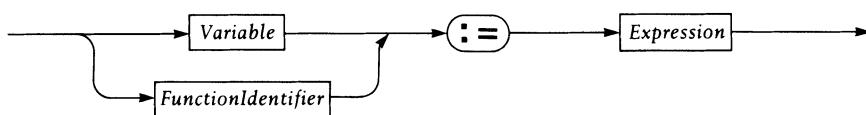


Figure 4.b Syntax diagram for *AssignmentStatement*

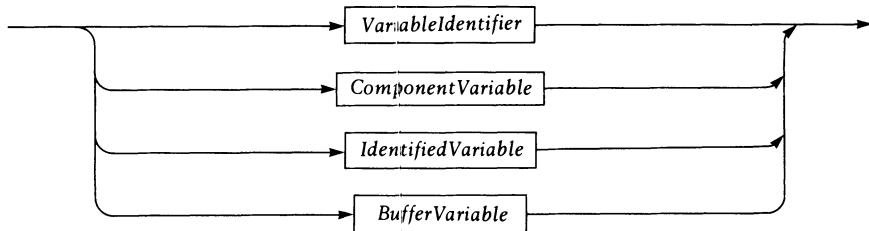


Figure 4.c Syntax diagram for *Variable*

An *expression* is a rule for calculating a value based on the conventional rules of algebra for left-to-right evaluation of operators and *operator precedence*. Expressions are composed of factors, terms, and simple expressions.

Factors are evaluated first and consist of individual constants or variables or function designators or array-parameter bounds or set constructors (see Chapter 8). A factor may also consist of the operator *not* applied to another factor representing a Boolean value. A factor may also comprise an expression enclosed within parentheses which is evaluated independently of preceding and following operators.

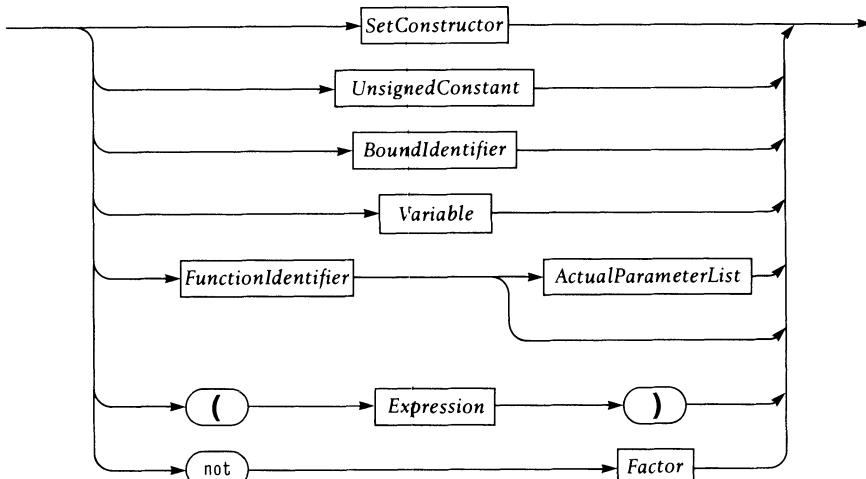


Figure 4.d Syntax diagram for *Factor*

Terms are evaluated next and consist of a sequence of factors, separated by multiplying operators (*, /, div, mod, and) or alternatively, simply a factor by itself.

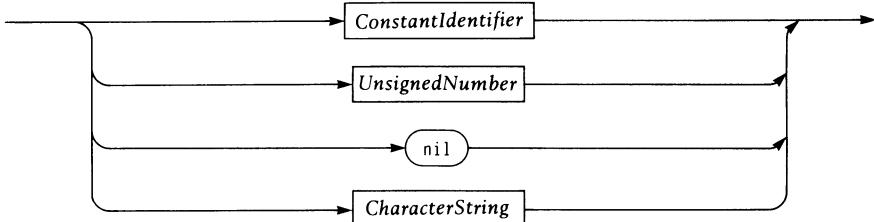


Figure 4.e Syntax diagram for *UnsignedConstant*

Simple expressions are evaluated after terms and consist of a sequence of terms, separated by adding operators (+, -, or) or alternatively, simply a term by itself. An optional sign-inversion operator (+, -) may prefix the first term of a simple expression.

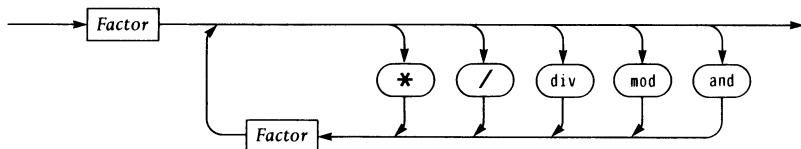


Figure 4.f Syntax diagram for *Term*

Finally expressions are evaluated. These comprise a simple expression, a relational operator (=, <>, <=, >=, >, in) and another simple expression, or simply a simple expression itself.

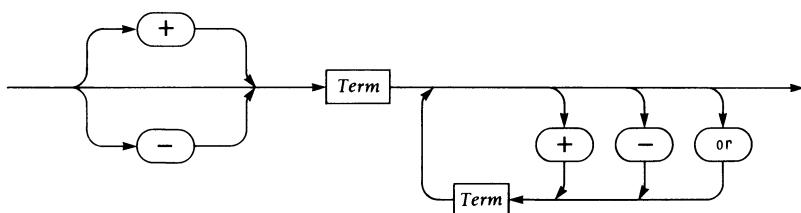
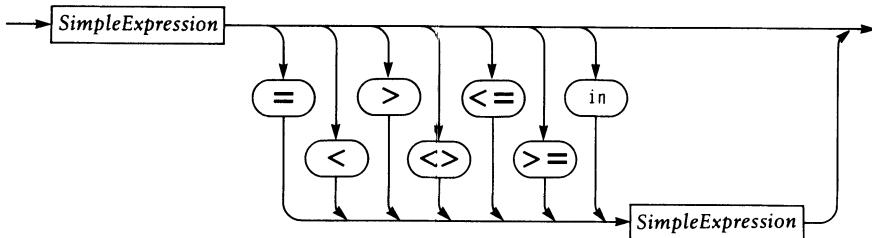


Figure 4.g Syntax diagram for *SimpleExpression*

**Figure 4.h** Syntax diagram for *Expression**Examples:*

$2 * 3 - 4 * 5$	$= (2 * 3) - (4 * 5)$	$= -14$
$15 \text{ div } 4 * 4$	$= (15 \text{ div } 4) * 4$	$= 12$
$80/5/3$	$= (80/5)/3$	$= 5.333$
$4/2 * 3$	$= (4/2) * 3$	$= 6.000$
$\text{sqrt}(\text{sqr}(3) + 11 * 5)$		$= 8.000$

We recommend that you refer to the table below whenever in doubt of the exact rules of operator precedence.

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Classification (precedence)</i>
not	Boolean negation (highest)
*, /, div, mod, and	Multiplying operators (next highest)
+, -, or	Adding operators (third highest)
=, <>, <, <=, >=, >, in	Relational operators (lowest).

See Appendix B for a full description of operators.

Boolean expressions have the property that their value may be known before the entire expression has been evaluated. Assume for example, that $x = 0$. Then the value of the expression

$$(x > 0) \text{ and } (x < 10)$$

is already known to be false after computation of the first factor, and the second need not be evaluated. Whether or not the second factor is evaluated is implementation-dependent. This means that you must assure that the second factor is well defined, independent of the value of the first factor. Hence, if we assume that the array A has an index ranging from 1 to 10, then the following example is in error! (Arrays are discussed in Chapter 6.)

```
I := 0;
repeat I := I + 1 until (I > 10) or (A[I] = 0)
(Note that if no A[I] = 0, a reference to A[11] will occur.)
```

Except for file variables (see Chapter 9), assignment is possible to variables of any type. The variable (or the function) and the expression must be *assignment compatible*. All the cases for assignment-compatibility are listed below:

1. The variable and the expression are the same type except if that type is a file type (see Chapter 9) or contains a file type as a component in another structured type.
2. The variable is real type and the expression is integer type.
3. The variable and the expression are the same or subranges (see Chapter 5) of the same ordinal type, and the value of the expression lies within the closed interval specified by the type of the variable. The value of the expression must be a value of the type of the variable
4. The variable and the expression are the same set type (see Chapter 8) or are set types with base types which are the same or subranges of the same ordinal type. Either both types or neither type must be packed.
5. The variable and the expression are string types (see Section 6.B) with the same number of elements.

Examples of assignments:

```

Root1 := Pi*X/Y
Root2 := -Root1
Root3 := (Root1 + Root2) * (1.0 + Y)
Danger := Temp > VaporPoint
Count := Count + 1
Degree := Degree + 10
SqrPr := sqr(pr)
Y      := sin(X) + cos(Y)

```

4.B. The Procedure Statement

Another kind of simple statement is the *procedure statement*, which activates the named procedure which is a subprogram specifying another set of actions to be performed on data. So far in this tutorial we have used the procedures `Read`, `Readln`, `Write`, and `Writeln` to perform input and output. Procedure statements are discussed fully in Chapter 11.

4.C. The Compound Statement and the Empty Statement

The *compound statement* specifies that its component statements be executed in the same sequence as they are written. The symbols `begin` and `end` act as statement brackets. Note that the statement part or “body” of a program has the form of a compound statement. (See Figures 3.a – 3.c.)

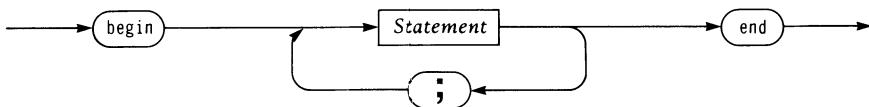


Figure 4.i Syntax diagram for *CompoundStatement*

```

program BeginEndExample(Output);
{ Program 4.1 - Illustrate the compound statement. }
var
  Sum: Integer;
begin
  Sum := 3 + 5;
  Writeln(Output, Sum, -Sum)
end .
  
```

Produces as results:

8

-8

Pascal uses the semicolon to *separate* statements, not to terminate statements; i.e., the semicolon is *not* part of the statement. The explicit rules regarding semicolons are reflected in the syntax of Appendix D. If one had written a semicolon after the second statement in Program 4.1, then an *empty statement* (implying no action) would have been assumed between the semicolon and the symbol `end`. This does no harm, for an empty statement is allowable at this point. Misplaced semicolons can, however, cause troubles — note the example for if statements in Section 4.E.

4.D. Repetitive Statements

Repetitive statements specify that certain statements be repeatedly executed. If the number of repetitions is known beforehand (before the repetitions are begun), the `for` statement is usually the appropriate construct you can use to express the situation; otherwise use the `repeat` or `while` statement.

4.D.1 The while statement

The `while` statement has the form:

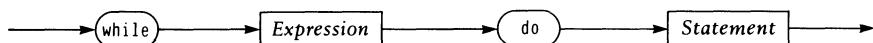


Figure 4.j Syntax diagram for *WhileStatement*

The statement following the symbol `do` is executed zero or more times. The expression controlling the repetition must be of type Boolean. Before the statement is executed the expression is evaluated; the statement is executed if the expression is true, otherwise the `while` statement terminates. Because the expression is evaluated for each iteration, you should be careful to keep the expression as simple as possible.

Program 4.3 raises a real value `x` to the power `y`, where `y` is a non-negative integer. A simpler, and evidently correct version is obtained by omitting the inner while statement: the variable `Result` is then obtained through `y` multiplications by `x`. Note the loop invariant: `Result * power(Base, Exponent) = power(X, Y)`. The inner while statement leaves `Result` and `power(Base, Exponent)` invariant, and improves the efficiency of the algorithm.

4.D.2 The repeat statement

The `repeat` statement has the form:

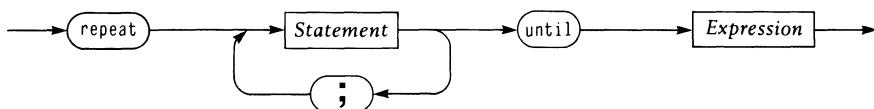


Figure 4.k Syntax diagram for *RepeatStatement*

36 Pascal User Manual

```
program WhileExample(Input,Output);

{ Program 4.2 - Compute the Nth partial sum of the
  harmonic series H(N) = 1 + 1/2 + 1/3 + ... + 1/N
  using a while statement for iteration. }

var
  N: Integer;
  H: Real;
begin
  Read(Input,N);  Write(Output,N);
  H := 0;
  while N > 0 do
    begin
      H := H + 1/N;  N := N - 1
    end;
  Writeln(Output,H)
end .
```

Produces as results:

10 2.928968E+00

```
program Exponentiation(Input, Output);

{ Program 4.3 - Compute power(X,Y) = "X raised to the
  power Y" using natural exponent. }

var
  Exponent, Y: Integer;
  Base, Result, X: Real;
begin  Read(Input,X,Y);  Writeln(Output,X,Y);
  Result := 1;  Base := X;  Exponent := Y;
  while Exponent > 0 do
    begin  { Result*power(Base,Exponent) = power(X,Y),
            Exponent > 0 }
      while not Odd(Exponent) do
        begin  Exponent := Exponent div 2;
              Base := Sqr(Base)
        end;
      Exponent := Exponent-1;  Result := Result * Base
    end;
  Writeln(Output,Result) { Result = power(X,Y) }
end .
```

Produces as results:

2.000000E+00 7
1.280000E+02

The sequence of statements between the symbols `repeat` and `until` is executed at least once. After each execution of the sequence of statements the Boolean expression is evaluated. Repeated execution is continued until the expression becomes true. Because the expression is evaluated for every iteration, you should be careful to keep it as simple as possible.

```
program RepeatExample(Input,Output);
{ Program 4.4 - Compute the Nth partial sum of the
  harmonic series H(N) = 1 + 1/2 + 1/3 + ... + 1/N
  using a repeat statement for iteration. }
var
  N: Integer;
  H: Real;
begin
  Read(Input,N);  Write(Output,N);
  H := 0;
  repeat
    H := H + 1/N;  N := N - 1
  until N = 0;
  Writeln(Output,H)
end .
```

Produces as results:

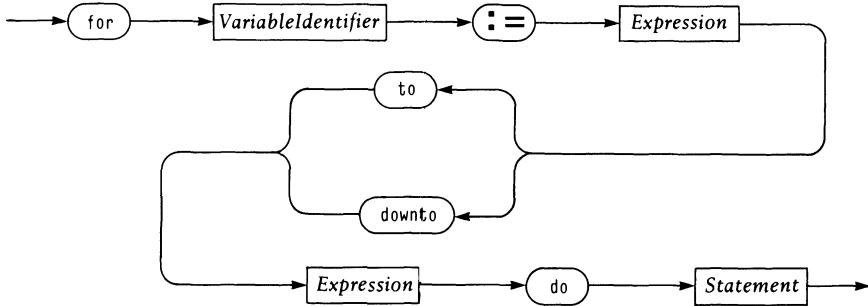
10 2.928968E+00

The above program performs correctly for $N > 0$. Consider what happens if $N \leq 0$. The while-version of the same program is correct for all N , including $N = 0$.

Note that it is a sequence of statements that the repeat statement executes; a bracketing pair `begin...end` would be redundant (but not incorrect).

4.D.3 The for statement

The *for statement* indicates that a statement be repeatedly executed while a progression of values is assigned to the *control variable* of the for statement. It has the general form:

**Figure 4.1** Syntax diagram for *ForStatement*

```

program ForExample(Input,Output);
{ Program 4.5 - Compute the Nth partial sum of the
  harmonic series H(N) = 1 + 1/2 + 1/3 + ... + 1/N
  using a for statement for iteration. }
var
  I, N: Integer;
  H: Real;
begin
  Read(Input,N);  Write(Output,N);
  H := 0;
  for I := N downto 1 do
    H := H + 1/I;
  Writeln(Output,H)
end .
  
```

Produces as results:

10 2.928968E+00

The control variable, which appears following the symbol `for`, must be of an ordinal type and declared in the same block in which the `for` statement appears. The initial value and the final value must be of an ordinal type compatible with the control variable. The control variable must not be altered by the component statement. This prohibits its appearing as a variable on the left-hand side of an assignment, in a `Read` or `Readln` procedure or as the control variable of another `for` statement, either directly within the `for` statement or within a procedure or function declared within the same block. The initial and final values

are evaluated only once. If in the case of `to` (`downto`) the initial value is greater (less) than the final value, the component statement is not executed. If the component statement is executed, it is an error if either the initial value or final value cannot be assigned to the control variable. The control variable is left undefined upon normal exit from the `for` statement.

```

program Cosine(Input,Output);
{ Program 4.6 - Compute the cosine using the
  expansion: cos(X) = 1 - sqr(X)/(2*1)
  + sqr(X)*sqr(X)/(4*3*2*1) - ... }

const
  Epsilon = 1e-7;
var
  Angle: Real    { radians };
  ASquared: Real { Angle squared };
  Series: Real   { cosine series };
  Term: Real     { next term in series };
  I, N: Integer  { number of cosines to compute };
  Power: Integer { power of next term };

begin
  Readln(Input,N);
  for I := 1 to N do
    begin
      Readln(Input,Angle);
      Term := 1; Power := 0; Series := 1;
      ASquared := Sqr(Angle);
      while Abs(Term) > Epsilon * Abs(Series) do
        begin
          Power := Power + 2;
          Term := -Term * ASquared / (Power*(Power-1));
          Series := Series + Term
        end;
      Writeln(Output, Angle, Series, Power div 2
              { = terms to convergence })
    end
  end.
end .

```

Produces as results:

1.534622E-01	9.882478E-01	3
3.333333E-01	9.449569E-01	4
5.000000E-01	8.775826E-01	5
1.000000E+00	5.403023E-01	6
3.141593E+00	-1.000000E+00	10

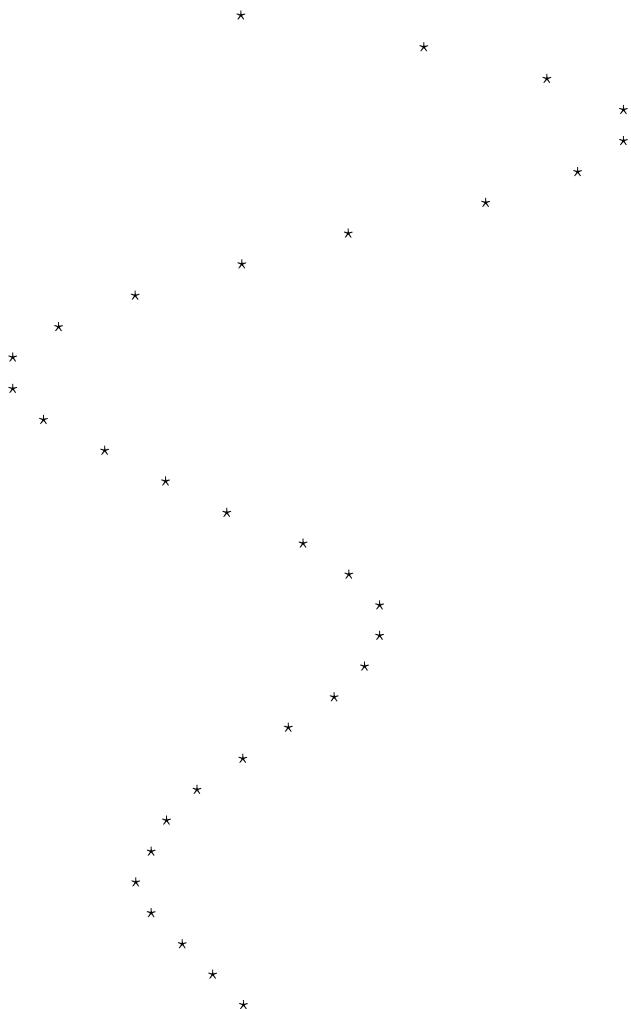
The following program plots a real-valued function $f(x)$ by letting the X-axis run vertically and then writing an asterisk in positions corresponding to the coordinates. The position of the asterisk is obtained by computing $y = f(x)$, multiplying by a scale factor, rounding the product to the next integer, and then adding a constant and letting the asterisk be preceded by that many blank spaces.

```

program Graph1(Output);
{ Program 4.7 - Generate graphic representation of
  the function:
    f(X) = exp(-X) * sin(2*Pi*X) }
const
  XLines = 16 { line spacings per 1 abscissa unit };
  Scale = 32 { character widths per 1 ordinate unit};
  ZeroY = 34 { character position of X axis };
  XLimit = 32 { length of graph in lines };
var
  Delta: Real { increment along abscissa };
  TwoPi: Real { 2 * Pi = 8 * ArcTan(1.0) };
  X, Y : Real;
  Point: Integer;
  YPosition: Integer;
begin { initialize constants: }
  Delta := 1 / Xlines;
  TwoPi := 8 * ArcTan(1.0);
  for Point := 0 to XLimit do
    begin
      X := Delta * Point;
      Y := Exp(-X) * Sin(TwoPi * X);
      YPosition := Round(Scale * Y) + ZeroY;
      repeat
        Write(Output, ' ');
        YPosition := YPosition - 1
      until YPosition = 0;
      Writeln(Output, '*')
    end
end .

```

Produces as results:



As a final example of for statements consider this program.

```
program SummingTerms(Output);
{ Program 4.8 - Compute in four ways the series:
  1 - 1/2 + 1/3 - ... + 1/9999 - 1/10000
  1) left to right in succession,
  2) left to right, all pos and neg
     terms then subtract,
  3) right to left in succession, and
  4) right to left, all pos and neg
     terms then subtract. }
```

42 Pascal User Manual

```
var
  SeriesLR, { series sum left to right in succession}
  SumLRPos, { sum of positive terms, left to right }
  SumLRNeg, { sum of negative terms, left to right }
  SeriesRL, { series sum right to left in succession}
  SumRLPos, { sum of positive terms, right to left }
  SumRLNeg, { sum of negative terms, right to left }
  PosTermLR, { next positive term, left to right }
  NegTermLR, { next negative term, left to right }
  PosTermRL, { next positive term, right to left }
  NegTermRL: Real { next negative term right to left
};

  PairsOfTerms: Integer { count of pairs of terms };

begin
  SeriesLR := 0;  SumLRPos := 0;  SumLRNeg := 0;
  SeriesRL := 0;  SumRLPos := 0;  SumRLNeg := 0;

  for PairsOfTerms := 1 to 5000 do
    begin
      PosTermLR := 1 / (2 * PairsOfTerms - 1);
      NegTermLR := 1 / (2 * PairsOfTerms);
      PosTermRL := 1 / (10001 - 2 * PairsOfTerms);
      NegTermRL := 1 / (10002 - 2 * PairsOfTerms);
      SeriesLR := SeriesLR + PosTermLR - NegTermLR;
      SumLRPos := SumLRPos + PosTermLR;
      SumLRNeg := SumLRNeg + NegTermLR;
      SeriesRL := SeriesRL + PosTermRL - NegTermRL;
      SumRLPos := SumRLPos + PosTermRL;
      SumRLNeg := SumRLNeg + NegTermRL;
    end;

    Writeln(Output, SeriesLR);
    Writeln(Output, SumLRPos - SumLRNeg);
    Writeln(Output, SeriesRL);
    Writeln(Output, SumRLPos - SumRLNeg)
end .
```

Produces as results:

```
6.930919E-01
6.931014E-01
6.930970E-01
6.930971E-01
```

Why do the four “identical” sums differ?

4.E. Conditional Statements

A *conditional statement* selects a single statement of its component statements for execution. Pascal offers two kinds of conditional statements, the if and case statements.

4.E.1 The if statement

The *if statement* specifies that a statement be executed only if a certain condition (Boolean expression) is true. If it is false, then either no statement or the statement following the symbol `else` is executed.

The form of an if statement is:

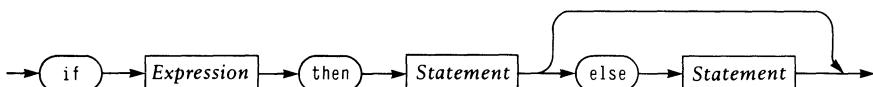


Figure 4.m Syntax diagram for *IfStatement*

The expression between the symbols `if` and `then` must be of type Boolean. Note that the first form may be regarded as an abbreviation of the second when the alternative statement is the empty statement. Caution: there is never a semicolon before an `else!` Hence, the text:

```
if P then begin S1; S2; S3 end; else S4
```

is incorrect. More deceptive is the text:

```
if P then; begin S1; S2; S3 end
```

Here, the statement controlled by the `if` is the empty statement between the `then` and the semicolon; hence, the compound statement following the if statement will always be executed.

The syntactic ambiguity arising from the construction:

```
if expression1 then if expression2 then statement1
else statement2
```

is resolved by interpreting this construction as equivalent to

```

if expression1 then
begin if expression2 then statement1
else statement2
end

```

You are further cautioned that a carelessly formulated if statement can be very costly. Take the example where there are n *mutually exclusive* conditions, $C_1 \dots C_n$, each instigating a distinct action, S_i . Let $P(C_i)$ be the probability of C_i being true, and say that $P(C_i) \geq P(C_j)$ for $i < j$. Then the most efficient sequence of if clauses is:

```

if C1 then S1
else if C2 then S2
else ...
else if C(n-1) then S(n-1) else Sn

```

The fulfillment of a condition and the execution of its statement completes the if statement, thereby bypassing the remaining tests.

If `Found` is a variable of type `Boolean`, another frequent abuse of the if statement can be illustrated by:

```

if Key = ValueSought then Found := true
else Found := false

```

A much simpler statement is:

```
Found := Key = ValueSought
```

The following program transforms Arabic numbers to Roman numerals by successively reducing the number in a sieve implemented by using if statements.

```

program ArabicToRoman(Output);
{ Program 4.9 - Write a table of powers of 2 in
Arabic numbers and Roman numerals. }

var
Rem { remainder },
Number: Integer;

```

```

begin
  Number := 1;
  repeat
    Write(Output, Number, ' ');
    Rem := Number;
    while Rem >= 1000 do
      begin Write(Output, 'M'); Rem := Rem - 1000 end;
    if Rem >= 900 then
      begin Write(Output, 'CM'); Rem := Rem - 900 end
    else
      if Rem >= 500 then
        begin Write(Output, 'D'); Rem := Rem - 500 end
      else
        if Rem >= 400 then
          begin Write(Output, 'CD');
            Rem := Rem - 400
          end;
    while Rem >= 100 do
      begin Write(Output, 'C'); Rem := Rem - 100 end;
    if Rem >= 90 then
      begin Write(Output, 'XC'); Rem := Rem - 90 end
    else
      if Rem >= 50 then
        begin Write(Output, 'L'); Rem := Rem - 50 end
      else
        if Rem >= 40 then
          begin Write(Output, 'XL');
            Rem := Rem - 40
          end;
    while Rem >= 10 do
      begin Write(Output, 'X'); Rem := Rem - 10 end;
    if Rem = 9 then
      begin Write(Output, 'IX'); Rem := Rem - 9 end
    else
      if Rem >= 5 then
        begin Write(Output, 'V'); Rem := Rem - 5 end
      else
        if Rem = 4 then
          begin Write(Output, 'IV');
            Rem := Rem - 4
          end;
    while Rem >= 1 do
      begin Write(Output, 'I'); Rem := Rem - 1; end;
    Writeln(Output);
    Number := Number * 2
  until Number > 5000
end .

```

Produces as results:

1 I
2 II
4 IV
8 VIII
16 XVI
32 XXXII
64 LXIV
128 CXXVIII
256 CCLVI
512 DXII
1024 MXXIV
2048 MMXLVIII
4096 MMMMXCVI

Notice again that each “branch” of an if statement consists of only one statement. Therefore, when more than one action is intended, a compound statement is necessary.

4.E.2 The case statement

The *case statement* consists of an expression (the selector) and a list of statements, each being associated with one or more constant values of the type of the selector. The selector type must be an ordinal type. Each constant value must be associated with at most one of the statements. The case statement selects for execution the statement that is associated with the current value of the selector; if no such constant is listed, it is an error. Upon completion of the selected statement, control goes to the end of the case statement. The form is:

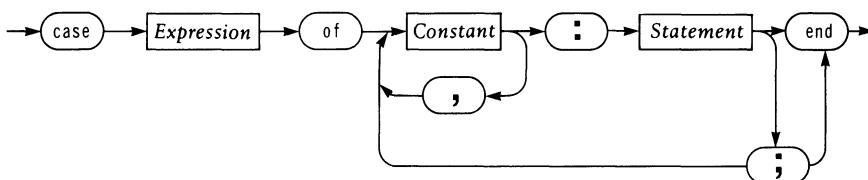


Figure 4.n Syntax diagram for *CaseStatement*

Examples: (Assume var i: Integer; ch: Char;)

```

case i of
  0: x := 0;
  1: x := sin(x);
  2: x := cos(x);
  3: x := exp(x);
  4: x := ln(x)
end;
case ch of
  'A', 'E', 'I', 'O', 'U',
  'a', 'e', 'i', 'o', 'u':
    vowel := vowel + 1;
  '+', '-', '*', '/', '=', '>', '<',
  '.', ',', '"', '?', '!', ':', ';', ''':
    punc := punc + 1
end

```

Notes: 1. Case constants are *not* labels (see Sections 3.B and 4.G) and cannot be referenced by a goto statement; their ordering is arbitrary.

2. Although the efficiency of the case statement depends on the implementation, the general rule is to use it when one has several mutually exclusive statements with similar probability of selection.

4.F. The With Statement

A *with statement* is used in conjunction with variables having a record type (a structured type). It is discussed in Section 7.C.

4.G. The Goto Statement

A *goto statement* is a simple statement indicating that further processing should continue at another part of the program text, namely at the place of the label.



Figure 4.0 Syntax diagram for *GotoStatement*

Each label:

1. must appear in the label declaration *prior* to its occurrence in the block.
2. must prefix *one and only one* statement appearing in the statement part of the block.
3. has a scope over the *entire text* of that block excepting any nested blocks that redeclare the label.

At least one of the following three conditions must hold for labels and the goto statements which refer to them:

1. The label prefixes a statement which contains the goto statement.
2. The label prefixes a statement in a statement sequence (within a compound statement or repeat statement) and any statement in the statement sequence contains the goto statement.
3. The label prefixes a statement in the statement sequence forming the statement part of a block that contains a procedure or function declaration that contains the goto.

Example (program fragment):

```

label 1; { block A }
...
procedure B; { block B }
    label 3, 5;
begin
    goto 3;
3: Writeln('Hello');
5: if P then
    begin S; goto 5 end; { while P do S }
    goto 1; { this causes early termination of
              the activation of B }
    Writeln('Goodbye')
end; { block B }

begin
    B;
1: Writeln(' Edsger')
    { a "goto 3" is not allowed in block A }
end { block A }
```

Jumps from outside of a structured statement into that statement are not allowed. Hence, these examples are incorrect.

Incorrect examples:

- a) for I := 1 to 10 do


```
begin S1;
      3: S2
      end;
      goto 3
```
- b) if B then goto 3;


```
...
if B1 then 3: S
```
- c) procedure P:


```
procedure Q;
begin ...
      3: S
      end;
begin ...
      goto 3
end.
```

A goto statement should be reserved for unusual or uncommon situations where the natural structure of an algorithm cannot be reasonably expressed with other structured statements. A common situation is the handling of an unexpected type of input data. A good rule is to avoid the use of jumps to express regular iterations and conditional execution of statements, for such jumps destroy the reflection of the structure of computation in the textual (static) structures of the program.

Moreover, the lack of correspondence between textual and computational (static and dynamic) structure is extremely detrimental to the clarity of the program and makes the task of verification much more difficult. The presence of goto's in a Pascal program is often an indication that the programmer has not yet learned "to think" in Pascal (as the goto is a necessary construction in some other programming languages).

CHAPTER 5

Enumerated and Subrange Types

We have seen the predefined, simple type identifiers `Boolean`, `Char`, `Integer` and `Real`. By using these type identifiers you can refer to the existing types that they represent. We now show how new ordinal types can be created by two mechanisms: the enumerated type and the subrange type. The enumerated type creates a new type that is unrelated to any other type, while the subrange type creates a new type that has a subset of the values of another existing ordinal type.

5.A. Enumerated Types

An enumerated type definition specifies an ordered set of values by enumerating the constant identifiers which denote the values.

The ordinal number of the first constant listed is 0; the second one is 1, etc.

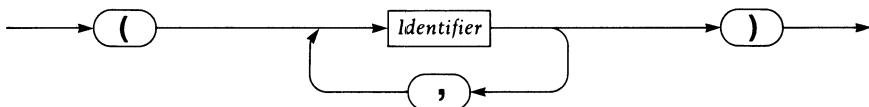


Figure 5.a Syntax diagram for *EnumeratedType*

Example:

```
type Color = (White, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green,
              Blue, Purple, Black);
Sex = (Male, Female);
Day = (Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat, Sun);
Operators = (Plus, Minus, Times, Divide);
Continent = (Africa, Antarctica, Asia, Europe
              Australia, NorthAmerica, SouthAmerica);
```

Incorrect example:

```
type Workday = (Mon, Tues, Wed, Thur, Fri, Sat);
Free = (Sat, Sun);
```

because the type of `Sat` is ambiguous.

You are already acquainted with the predefined type `Boolean` defined as:

```
type Boolean = (false, true);
```

This automatically defines the constant identifiers `false` and `true` and specifies that `false < true`.

The relational operators `=`, `<>`, `<`, `<=`, `>`, and `>=`, are applicable to all enumerated types provided both operands are of the same type. The order is determined by the sequence in which the constants are listed.

Predeclared functions with arguments of ordinal types are:

<code>succ(X)</code>	e.g. <code>succ(Blue) = Yellow</code>	the successor of x
<code>pred(X)</code>	<code>pred(Blue) = Red</code>	the predecessor of x
<code>ord(X)</code>	<code>ord(Blue) = 2</code>	the ordinal number of x

Assuming that `c` and `c1` are of type `Color` (above), `B` is of type `Boolean`, and `s1...sn` are arbitrary statements, then the following are meaningful statements:

```
for C := Black downto Red do S1;
while (C1 <> C) and B do S1;
if C > White then C := pred(C);
case C of
  Red, Blue, Yellow: S1;
  Purple: S2;
  Green, Orange: S3;
  White, Black: S4
end
```

Program 5.1 illustrates some operations on data having an enumerated type.

```
program DayTime(Output);
{ Program 5.1 - Illustrate enumerated types. }
type
  Days = (Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat, Sun);
  When = (Past, Present, Future);
var
  Day: Days;
  Yesterday, Today, Tomorrow: Days;
  Time: When;
begin
  Today := Sun    { Pascal can't read a value of an
  Time := Present;  emumerated type from Input. };
  repeat
    case Time of
      Present: begin { Calculate Yesterday }
        Time := Past;
        if Today = Mon then Yesterday := Sun
        else Yesterday := pred(Today);
        Day := Yesterday; Write(Output, 'Yesterday ');
      end;
      Past: begin { Calculate Tomorrow }
        Time := Future;
        if Today = Sun then Tomorrow := Mon
        else Tomorrow := succ(Today);
        Day := Tomorrow; Write(Output, 'Tomorrow ');
      end;
      Future: begin { Reset to Present }
        Time := Present;
        Day := Today; Write(Output, 'Today ');
      end;
    end;
    case Day of
      Mon: Write(Output, 'Monday');
      Tue: Write(Output, 'Tuesday');
      Wed: Write(Output, 'Wednesday');
      Thu: Write(Output, 'Thursday');
      Fri: Write(Output, 'Friday');
      Sat: Write(Output, 'Saturday');
      Sun: Write(Output, 'Sunday')
    end;
    Writeln(Output, Ord(Time) - 1)
  until Time = Present
end .
```

Produces as results:

Yesterday	Saturday	-1
Tomorrow	Monday	1
Today	Sunday	0

5.B. Subrange Types

A type may be defined as a *subrange* of any other previously defined ordinal type — called its *host type*. The definition of a subrange simply indicates the least and the largest constant value in the subrange, where the lower bound must not be greater than the upper bound. A subrange of the type `Real` is *not* allowed, because real is not an ordinal type.



Figure 5.b Syntax diagram for *SubrangeType*

The host of the subrange type determines the validity of all operations involving values of the subrange type. Recall that ordinal-type assignment compatibility assumes that the variable and the expression are the same or subranges of the same ordinal type, and the value of the expression lies within the closed interval specified by the type of the variable. For example, given the declaration:

```
var A: 1..10; B: 0..30; C: 20..30;
```

The host type for `A`, `B`, and `C` is `Integer`. Hence the assignments

```
A := B; C := B; B := C;
```

are all valid statements, although their execution may sometimes be an error. Whenever ordinal types are discussed throughout this text, the phrase “or subrange thereof” is therefore assumed to be implied and is not always mentioned.

Example:

```
type Days = (Mon,Tue,Wed,Thu,Fri,Sat,Sun)
           { enumerated type };
Workdays = Mon..Fri { subrange of days };
Index = 0..63 { subrange of Integer };
Letter = 'A'..'Z' { subrange of Char };
Natural = 0..MaxInt;
Positive = 1..MaxInt;
```

Subrange types provide the means for a more explanatory statement of the problem. To the implementer they also suggest an opportunity to conserve memory space and to introduce validity checks upon assignment at run-time. (For an example with subrange types, see Program 6.1.). For example, a variable declared to be of type 0..200 might occupy only one byte (8 bits) on many implementations, whereas a variable of type Integer might occupy many bytes.

CHAPTER 6

Structured Types in General — The Array Type in Particular

Simple types (ordinal and real types) are unstructured types. The other types in Pascal are *structured types* and pointer types. As structured statements are compositions of other statements, structured types are compositions of other types. It is the type(s) of the *components* and — most importantly — the structuring method that characterize a structured type.

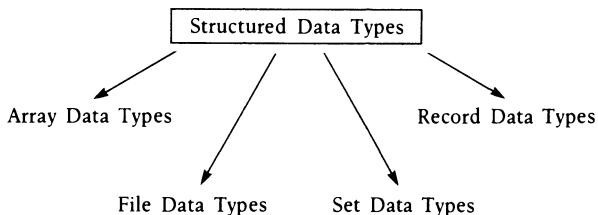


Figure 6.a Type Taxonomy of Structured Data Types

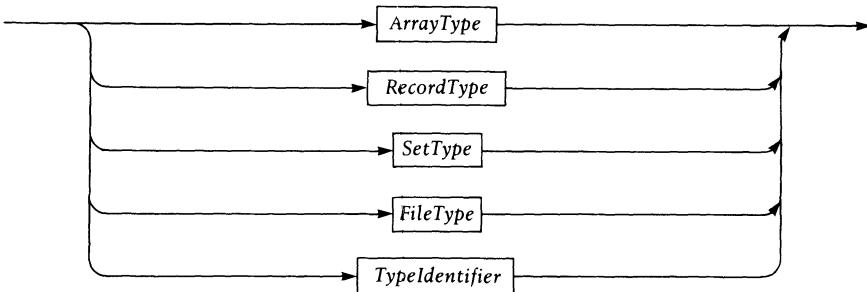


Figure 6.b Syntax diagram for *StructuredType*

An option available to each of the structuring methods is an indication of the preferred internal data representation. A structured type definition prefixed with the symbol `packed` signals the compiler to economize storage requirements, even at the expense of additional execution time and a possible expansion of the code, due to the necessary packing and unpacking operations. It is your responsibility to realize if you want this trade of execution efficiency for space. (The actual effects upon efficiency and savings in storage space are implementation dependent, and may, in fact, be zero.)

6.A. The Array Type

An array type consists of a fixed number of components (defined when the array type is introduced) all having the same type, called the *component type*. Each component can be explicitly denoted and directly accessed by the name of the array variable followed by the so-called *index* in square brackets. Indices are computable; their type is called the *index type*. Furthermore, the time required to select (access) a component does not depend upon the value of the selector (index); hence the array is termed a *random-access structure*.

The definition of a new array type specifies both the component type and the index type. The general form is:

```
type A = array [T1] of T2;
```

where `A` is a new type identifier; `T1` is the index type, which must be ordinal, and `T2` is any type.

Arrays provide a means of grouping under a single name several variables having identical characteristics. An array variable declaration gives a name to the entire array structure. Two operations valid for entire array variables are assignment and selection of components. A component is selected by specifying the name of the array variable followed by an ordinal expression enclosed in square brackets. The operations permitted on such a component variable are those which are valid for any variable of the component type of that array type.

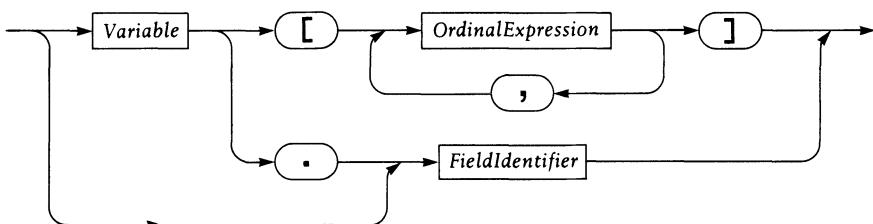


Figure 6.c Syntax Diagram for *ComponentVariable*

Examples of variable declarations:

Memory: array [0..Max] of Integer

Sick: packed array [Days] of Boolean

Examples of sample assignments:

Memory[I+J] := X

Sick[Mon] := true

(Of course these examples assume the definition of the auxiliary identifiers.)

Programs 6.1 and 6.2 illustrate the use of arrays. Consider how you would extend Program 6.2 to plot more than one function — both with and without the use of an array.

58 Pascal User Manual

```
program MinMax(Input,Output);
{ Program 6.1 - Find the largest and smallest number
  in a given list. }
const
  MaxSize = 20;
type
  ListSize = 1..MaxSize;
var
  Item: ListSize;
  Min, Max, First, Second: Integer;
  A: array [ListSize] of Integer;
begin
  for Item := 1 to MaxSize do
    begin Read(Input, A[Item]);
      Write(Output, A[Item] :4)
    end;
  Writeln(Output);
  Min := A[1];  Max := Min;  Item := 2;
  while Item < MaxSize do
    begin First := A[Item];  Second := A[Item+1];
      if First > Second then
        begin
          if First > Max then Max := First;
          if Second < Min then Min := Second
        end
      else
        begin
          if Second > Max then Max := Second;
          if First < Min then Min := First
        end;
      Item := Item + 2
    end;
  if Item = MaxSize then
    begin
      if A[MaxSize] > Max then Max := A[MaxSize]
      else
        if A[MaxSize] < Min then Min := A[MaxSize];
    end;
  Writeln(Output, Max, Min)
end .
```

Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

35	68	94	7	88	-5	-3	12	35	9	-6	3	0	-2
74	88	52	43	5	4								
			94			-6							

```

program Graph2(Output);

{ Program 6.2 - Generate graphic representation
  (with X-axis) of the function:
  f(X) = exp(-X) * sin(2*Pi*X)
  Compare with Program 4.7. }

const
  XLines = 16 { line spacings per 1 abscissa unit };
  Scale = 32 { character widths per 1 ordinate unit};
  ZeroY = 34 { character position of X axis };
  XLimit = 32 { length of graph in lines };
  YLimit = 68 { height of graph in character widths};

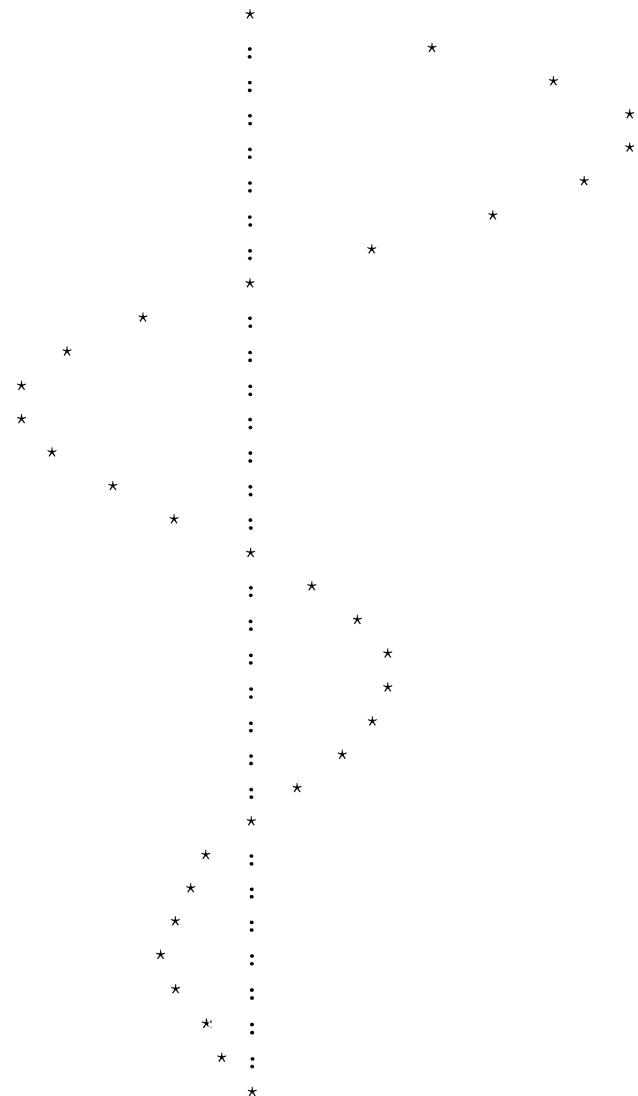
type
  Domain = 1..YLimit;

var
  Delta: Real { increment along abscissa };
  TwoPi: Real { 2 * Pi = 8 * ArcTan(1.0) };
  X, Y: Real;
  Point: 0 .. XLimit;
  Plot, YPosition, Extent: Domain;
  YPlot: array [Domain] of Char;

begin { initialize constants: }
  Delta := 1 / Xlines;
  TwoPi := 8 * ArcTan(1.0);
  for Plot := 1 to Ylimit do
    YPlot[Plot] := ' ';
  for Point := 0 to XLimit do
    begin
      X := Delta * Point;
      Y := Exp(-X) * Sin(TwoPi * X);
      YPlot[ZeroY] := ':';
      YPosition := Round(Scale * Y) + ZeroY;
      YPlot[YPosition] := '*';
      if YPosition < ZeroY then Extent := ZeroY
      else Extent := YPosition;
      for Plot := 1 to Extent do
        Write(Output, YPlot[Plot]);
      Writeln(Output); YPlot[YPosition] := ' '
    end
  end .

```

Produces as results:



Since T_2 may be any type, the components of arrays may be structured. In particular, if T_2 is also an array type, then the original array type A is said to be *multidimensional*. Hence, the declaration of a multidimensional array M can be so formulated:

```
var M: array [A..B] of array [C..D] of T;
```

and then

$M[I][J]$

denotes the component J (of type T) of component I of M .

For multidimensional arrays, it is customary to make these convenient abbreviations:

`var M: array [A..B,C..D] of T;`

and

$M[I,J]$

We may regard M as a matrix and say that $M[I,J]$ is component J (in column J) of component I of M (of row I of M).

Arrays are not limited to two dimensions, for T can again be a structured type. In general, the (abbreviated) form is:

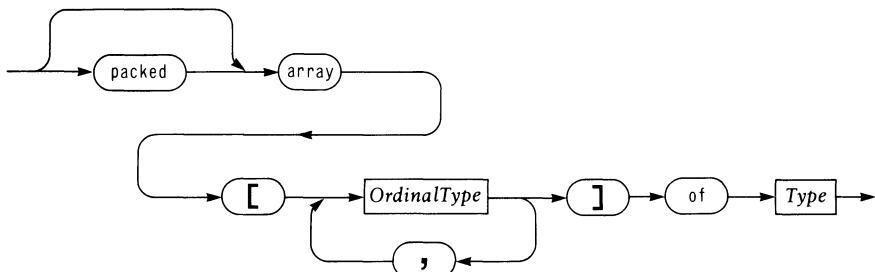


Figure 6.d Syntax diagram for *ArrayType*

If n index types are specified, the array is said to be n -dimensional, and a component is denoted by n index expressions.

If A and B are array variables of the same type, then the assignment statement

$A := B$

is allowed if the arrays are component-wise assignable:

$A[i] := B[i]$

(for each i that is a value of the index type), and is an abbreviation for the assignment of each corresponding component.

62 Pascal User Manual

```
program MatrixMul(Input,Output);
{ Program 6.3 - Matrix Multiplication }
const
  M = 4;  P = 3;  N = 2;
var
  I: 1..M;
  J: 1..N;
  K: 1..P;
  Sum, Element: Integer;
  A: array [1..M, 1..P] of Integer;
  B: array [1..P, 1..N] of Integer;
  C: array [1..M, 1..N] of Integer;
begin { Assign initial values to A and B: }
  for I := 1 to M do begin
    for K := 1 to P do begin
      Read(Input,Element);
      Write(Output,Element);
      A[I,K] := Element
    end;
    Writeln(Output)
  end;
  Writeln(Output);
  for K := 1 to P do begin
    for J := 1 to N do begin
      Read(Input,Element);
      Write(Output,Element);
      B[K,J] := Element
    end;
    Writeln(Output)
  end;
  Writeln(Output);
  { Multiply A and B to get C: }
  for I := 1 to M do begin
    for J := 1 to N do begin
      Sum := 0;
      for K := 1 to P do
        Sum := Sum + A[I,K] * B[K,J];
      C[I,J] := Sum;  Write(Output,Sum)
    end;
    Writeln(Output)
  end;
  Writeln(Output)
end .
```

Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

1	2	3
-2	0	2
1	0	1
-1	2	-3
-1	3	
-2	2	
2	1	
1	10	
6	-4	
1	4	
-9	-2	

Note that the index types for arrays A, B, and C in the above program are fixed. If we could write a generalized matrix-multiply subprogram for a library, we need a facility to provide for adjustable index types. Pascal provides conformant-array parameters for this purpose (see Section 11.A.2); and Program 11.4, MatrixMul2, illustrates their use.

6.B. String Types

Strings were defined earlier as sequences of characters enclosed in apostrophes (Section 1.E). Strings consisting of a single character are the constants of the standard type Char (Section 2.D); those of N characters ($N > 1$), are constants of a type defined by:

```
packed array [1..N] of Char
```

Such a type is called a *string type*.

The assignment

```
A := E
```

where array variable A and expression E have any string types with the same number of components is valid. Similarly, the relational operators (=, <>, <, >, <=, and <=) may be used to compare any two strings that have the same number of components; the ordering considers the first

element ($A[1]$) to be most significant and is determined by the ordering of the predeclared type Char.

6.C. Pack and Unpack

Access to individual components of packed arrays is often costly, and depending on the situation and the particular Pascal implementation, sometimes you are advised to pack or unpack a packed array in a single operation. This is possible through the predeclared transfer procedures Pack and Unpack. Letting U be a non-packed array variable of type

```
array [A..D] of T
      { T cannot be a type containing a file type }
```

and P be a packed array variable of type

```
packed array [B..C] of
```

where $ord(D) - ord(A) \geq ord(C) - ord(B)$ then

```
Pack (U, I, P)
```

means to pack that part of U beginning at component I into P , and

```
Unpack (P, U, I)
```

means to unpack P into U beginning at component I .

CHAPTER 7

Record Types

Record types are perhaps the most flexible of data constructs. Conceptually, a record type is a template for a structure whose parts may have quite distinct characteristics. For example, assume we wish to record information about a person. Known are the name, height, sex, date of birth, number of dependents, and marital status. Furthermore, if the person is married or widowed, the date of the (last) marriage is given; if divorced, the date of the (most recent) divorce and whether this is the first divorce or not; and if single, no other information is of interest. All of this information can be expressed in a single “record,” and each piece of information can be accessed separately.

7.A. Fixed Records

More formally, a record is a structure consisting of a fixed number of components, called *fields*. Unlike the array, components of a record type can have different types and cannot be indexed by an expression. A record-type definition specifies for each component its type and an identifier, the *field identifier*, to denote it. The scope of a field identifier is the innermost record in which it is defined. The two operations valid for entire record variables are assignment and selection of components.

In order that the type of selected component be evident from the program text (without executing the program), the record selector consists of fixed field identifiers rather than a computable index value.

To take a simple example, assume we wish to compute with complex numbers of the form $a + bi$, where a and b are real numbers and i is the square root of -1 . There is no predefined type “complex.” However, we can easily define a record type to represent complex numbers. This record would need two fields, both of type `Real`, for the real and imaginary parts. The syntax necessary to express this is:

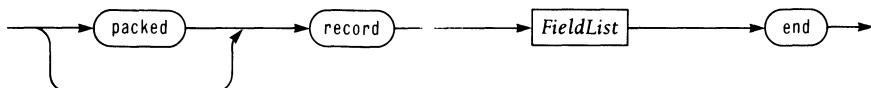


Figure 7.a Syntax diagram for *RecordType*

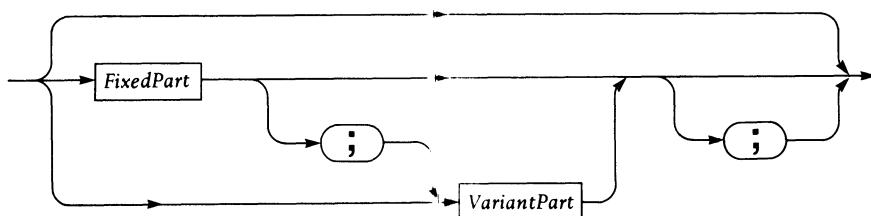


Figure 7.b Syntax diagram for *FieldList*



Figure 7.c Syntax diagram for *FixedPart*

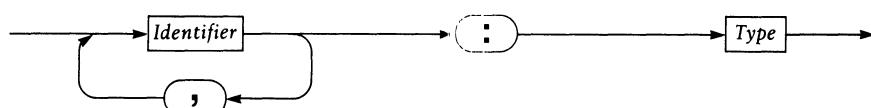


Figure 7.d Syntax diagram for *RecordSection*

Applying these rules, we can state the following definition and declaration:

```
type Complex = record Re,Im: Real end;
var Z: Complex;
```

where `Complex` is a type identifier, `Re` and `Im` are identifiers of fields, and `Z` is a variable of type `Complex`. Consequently, `Z` is a record made up of two components or fields. See Program 7.1.

To access a record component, the name of the record is followed by a period, and the respective field identifier (see Figure 6.c). For example, the following assigns `5 + 3i` to `Z`:

```
Z.Re := 5;
Z.Im := 3
```

Likewise, a type representing a date can be defined as:

```
Date = packed record
    Year: 1900..2100;
    Mo: (Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, May, Jun,
          Jul, Aug, Sep, Oct, Nov, Dec);
    Day: 1..31
end
```

Note: The type `Date` also includes, for instance, a 31st April. A toy can be described as:

```
Toy = record
    Kind: (Ball, Top, Boat, Doll, Blocks,
           Game, Model, Book);
    Cost: Real;
    Received: Date;
    Enjoyed: (Alot, Some, Alittle, None);
    Broken, Lost: Boolean
end
```

A homework assignment can be defined as:

```
Assignment = packed record
    Subject:(History, Language, Lit,
              Math, Psych, Science);
    Assigned: Date;
    Grade: 0..4;
    Weight: 1..10
end
```

68 Pascal User Manual

```
program ComplexArithmetic(output);
{ Program 7.1 - Illustrate complex numbers operations.}
const
  Increment = 4;
type
  Complex =
    record
      Re, Im: Real
    end;
var
  X, Y: Complex;
  Pair: Integer;
begin
  X.Re := 2;  X.Im := 5;  { initialize X }
  Y := X;          { initialize Y }
  for Pair := 1 to 5 do begin
    Writeln(Output, 'X = ', X.Re :5:1, X.Im :5:1, 'i');
    Writeln(Output, 'Y = ', Y.Re :5:1, Y.Im :5:1, 'i');

    {X + Y}
    Writeln(Output, 'Sum = ', X.Re + Y.Re :5:1,
            X.Im + Y.Im :5:1, 'i');

    {X * Y}
    Writeln(Output, 'Product = ',
            X.Re * Y.Re - X.Im*Y.Im :5:1,
            X.Re * Y.Im + X.Im * Y.Re :5:1, 'i');
    Writeln(Output);
    X.Re := X.Re + Increment;
    X.Im := X.Im - Increment
  end
end .
```

Produces as results:

```
X = 2.0 5.0i
Y = 2.0 5.0i
Sum = 4.0 10.0i
Product = -21.0 20.0i
```

```
X = 6.0 1.0i
Y = 2.0 5.0i
Sum = 8.0 6.0i
Product = 7.0 32.0i
```

```
X = 10.0 -3.0i
Y = 2.0 5.0i
Sum = 12.0 2.0i
Product = 35.0 44.0i
```

```
X = 14.0 -7.0i
Y = 2.0 5.0i
Sum = 16.0 -2.0i
Product = 63.0 56.0i
```

```
X = 18.0-11.0i
Y = 2.0 5.0i
Sum = 20.0 -6.0i
Product = 91.0 68.0i
```

If the record is itself nested within another structure, the naming of the record variable reflects this structure. For example, assume we wish to record the most recent smallpox vaccination for each member in a family. A possibility is to define the members as an enumerated type, and then keep the dates in an array of records:

```
type FamilyMember =
    (Father, Mother, Child1, Child2, Child3);
var VaccinationDate: array [FamilyMember] of Date;
```

An update might then be recorded as:

```
VaccinationDate[Child3].Mo := Apr;
VaccinationDate[Child3].Day := 23;
VaccinationDate[Child3].Year := 1973
```

7.B. Variant Records

Sometimes we may want to include information in a record structure which depends on some other information already in the record. We can define a variant record type which includes additional fields depending on the value of another field.

The syntax for a record type makes provisions for a *variant part*, implying that a record type may be specified as consisting of several *variants*. This means that different variables, although said to be of the same type, may assume structures which differ in the number and types of components.

Each variant is characterized by a list, in parentheses, of declarations of its pertinent components. Each list is preceded by one or more constants, and the set of lists is preceded by a case clause specifying the data type of these constants (i.e., the type according to which the variants are discriminated).

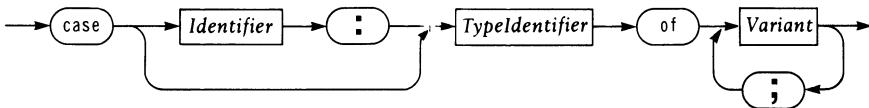


Figure 7.e Syntax diagram for *VariantPart*

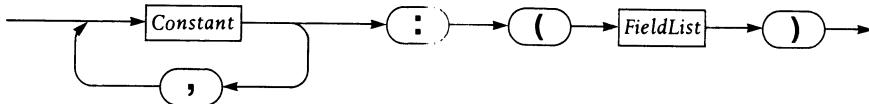


Figure 7.f Syntax diagram for *Variant*

As an example, assume the existence of a

```

type
  MaritalStatus = (Married,Widowed,Divorced,Single)
  
```

Then we can describe persons by data of the

```

type Person =
  record
    { fields common to all persons go here };
    case MaritalStatus of
      Married: ( {fields of married persons only} );
      Single: ( {fields of single persons only} );
      ...
  end
  
```

Note that *every* value of the type by which the variants are discriminated (the so-called *tag type*) must be explicitly listed with one of the variants. In the above example the constants `Widowed` and `Divorced` must also appear (along with `Married` and `Single`) for the example to be valid.

Usually, a component (field) of the record itself indicates its currently valid variant. For example the above defined person record is likely to contain a common field:

```
MS: MaritalStatus
```

This frequent situation can be abbreviated by including the declaration of the discriminating component — the so-called *tag field* — in the case clause itself, i.e., by writing

```
case MS: MaritalStatus of
```

It is helpful to “outline” the information about a person before defining it as a variant record structure.

I. Person

- A. name (last, first)
- B. height (natural number)
- C. sex (male, female)
- D. date of birth (year, month, day)
- E. number of dependents (natural number)
- F. marital status
 - if married,widowed
 - a. date of marriage (year, month, day)
 - if divorced
 - a. date of divorce (year, month, day)
 - b. first divorce (false, true)
 - if single

Figure 7.g is a corresponding picture of two “sample” people with different attributes.

wayne		
elizabeth		
169		
female		
jun	27	1947
3		
divorced		
apr	17	1981
false		

(A) {	whitecomb
}	william
(B) {	186
}	male
(C) {	sep
	12
	1951
(D) {	1
(E) {	single
(F) {	

Figure 7.g Two Sample People

A record defining `Person` can now be formulated as:

```

type String15 = packed array [1..15] of Char;
Status = (Married, Wid wed, Divorced, Single);
Date = packed record
    Year: 1900..2000;
    Mo: (Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, May, Jun,
          Jul, Aug, Sep, Oct, Nov, Dec);
    Day: 1..31;
end;
Natural = 0..MaxInt;
Person = record
    Name: record First, Last: String15 end;
    Height: Natural { centimeters };
    Sex: (Male, Female);
    Birth: Date;
    Depnts: Natural;
    case MS: Status of
        Married, Wid wed: (MDate: Date);
        Divorced: (DDate: Date;
                    FirstD: Boolean);
        Single: ();
    end { Person }

```

Notes:

1. All field names must be distinct — even if they occur in different variants.
2. If a variant is empty (i.e., has no fields), the form is:
`C:()`
3. A field list can have only one variant part and it must follow the fixed part of the record.
4. A variant may itself contain a variant part; hence variant parts can be nested.
5. The scope of enumerated type constant identifiers that are introduced in a record type extends over the enclosing block.

Referencing a record component is essentially a simple linear reconstruction of the outline. As an example, assume a variable `P` of type `Person` and “create” the second of the model people.

```

P.Name.Last := 'Whitcomb      ';
P.Name.First := 'William      ';
P.Height := 186;
P.Sex := Male;
P.Birth.Year := 1951;
P.Birth.Mo := Sep;      P.Birth.Day := 12;
P.Depdts := 1;
P.MS := Single;

```

7.C. The With Statement

The above notation can be a bit tedious, and you may wish to abbreviate it using the *with statement*. The with statement effectively opens the scope containing the field identifiers of the specified record variable, so that the field identifiers may occur as variable identifiers (thereby providing an opportunity for the Pascal compiler to optimize the qualified statement). The general form is:

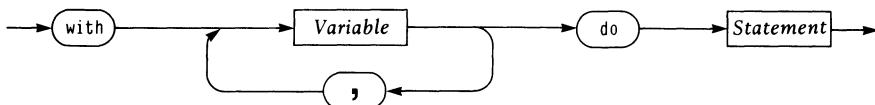


Figure 7.h Syntax diagram for *WithStatement*

Within the qualified statement of the with statement we denote a field of a record variable by designating only its field identifier (without preceding it with the entire record variable).

The with statement below is equivalent to the preceding series of assignments:

```

with P do begin
  with Name do begin
    Last := 'Whitcomb      ';
    First := 'William      ';
  end;
  Height := 186;
  Sex := Male;
  with Birth do begin
    Year := 1951; Mo := Sep; Day := 12
  end;

```

```
Depdts := 1;
MS := Single;
end
```

Likewise,

```
var CurrentDate: Date;
...
with Currentdate do
  if Mo = Dec then
    begin Mo := Jan; Year := Year + 1 end
  else Mo := succ(Mo)
```

is equivalent to

```
var CurrentDate: Date;
...
if CurrentDate.Mo = Dec then
  begin CurrentDate.Mo := Jan;
  CurrentDate.Year := CurrentDate.Year + 1 end
else CurrentDate.Mo := succ(CurrentDate.Mo)
```

And the following accomplishes the vaccine update example given earlier:

```
with VaccinationDate[Child3] do
  begin Year := 1973; Mo := Apr; Day := 23 end
```

When the with statement is executed, a reference to the record variable is established prior to the execution of the qualified statement. Therefore assignments made by the qualified statement to any elements of the record variable list will not change the identity of the record variable.

For example:

```
var Who: FamilyMember;
...
Who := Father;
with VaccinationDate[Who] do begin
  Who := Mother;
  Mo := Jul; Day := 7; Year := 1947
end
```

The with statement sets the fields of VaccinationDate[Father].

Nested with statements can be abbreviated. The form:

```
with R1, R2, ..., Rn do S
```

is equivalent to

```
with R1 do
  with R2 do
    ...
  with Rn do S
```

Thus the example defining a person **P** can be rewritten:

```
with P, Name, Birth do begin
  Last := 'Whitcomb' ;
  First := 'William' ;
  Height := 186;
  Sex := Male;
  Year := 1951;
  Mo := Sep;
  Day := 12;
  Depdts := 1;
  MS := Single;
end { with }
```

An example which illustrates scopes of field identifiers follows.
Whereas:

```
var A: array [2..8] of Integer;
  A: 2..8;
```

is not allowed, because the definition of **A** is ambiguous,

```
var A: Integer;
  B: record
    A: Real; B: Boolean
  end;
```

is allowed, because the notation for the integer **A** is easily distinguishable from the real **B.A**. Likewise, the record variable **B** is distinguishable from the Boolean **B.B**. Within the qualified statement **S** in

```
with B do S
```

the identifiers **A** and **B** now denote the components **B.A** and **B.B** respectively, and the integer variable identified by **A** is inaccessible.

CHAPTER 8

Set Types

A set type provides a compact structure for recording a collection of values having the same ordinal type. More precisely, a set type defines the set of values that is the powerset of its base type, i.e., the set of all possible subsets of values of the base type, including the empty set. Therefore, a single value of a set type is a set, and the elements of that set are values of the base type. A set is also a random-access structure whose elements all have the same base type, which must be an ordinal type.

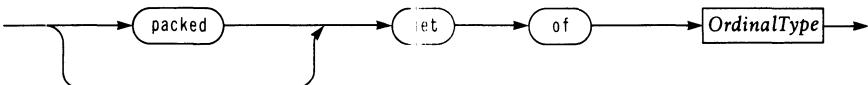


Figure 8.a Syntax diagram for *SetType*

Operations valid for set values are assignment, the familiar set operations (e.g., set union), equality, and selection of components by testing for membership (see below). Set values may be built up from set elements by the operation of set construction. Implementations of Pascal usually define limits for the size of sets, which can be quite small (e.g., the number bits in a machine “word”). The limit applies directly to the range of the base type of the set type.

8.A. Set Constructors

A set value can be specified by a set constructor which contains descriptions of the set elements separated by commas and enclosed in square brackets. An element description can be an expression, the value of which is the element, or a range of the form `low..high`, where the values of the expressions `low` and `high` are the lower and upper bounds of a collection of elements. If the lower bound is greater than the upper bound of the range (i.e., `low > high`), no elements are described.

The expressions must all have the same ordinal type which is the *base type* of the set constructor type. The set constructor `[]` denotes the empty set of *every* set type. Set constructors do not carry full type information [see Reference 10], such as whether or not the set is packed. Therefore the type of a set constructor is both packed and unpacked to be type compatible with other sets in set expressions.

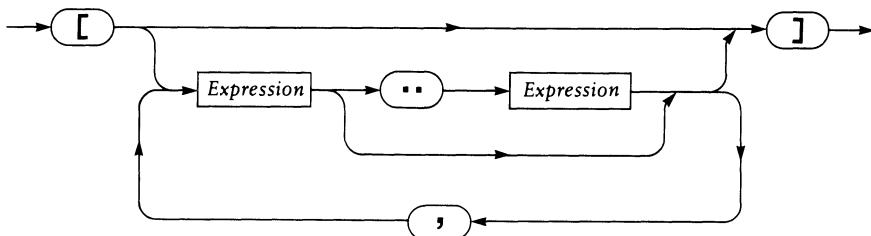


Figure 8.b Syntax diagram for *SetConstructor*

Examples of set constructors:

```

[13]
[i+j, i-j]
['0'..'9']
[red, yellow, blue]
['a','b','c','d','e','f','g','h','i',
 'j','k','l','m','n','o','p','q','r',
 's','t','u','v','w','x','y','z']

```

8.B. Set Operations

If x is a set variable, and E is a set expression, then

$x := E$

is allowed if all members of E are in the base type of x , and the types of x and E both are packed or neither is packed. The following operators are applicable on all objects with set structure. Assume A and B are set values of the same type:

$A + B$ *set union* of all elements in both A and B .

$A * B$ *set intersection* of all elements common to both A and B .

$A - B$ *set difference* of all elements of A that are not also elements of B .

Five relational operators are applicable to set operands. Assume A and B are set expressions of the same type and e is an ordinal expression of the base type.

$e \in A$ *set membership*. The result is true when e is an element of A , otherwise false.

$A = B$ *set equality*.

$A <> B$ *set inequality*.

$A \subseteq B$ *set inclusion*; true if A is a proper or improper subset of B .

$A \supseteq B$ *set inclusion*; true if B is a proper or improper subset of A .

Examples of declarations

```
type Primary = (Red, Yellow, Blue);
          Color = set of Primary;
var Hue1, Hue2: Color;
     Vowels, Consonants, Letters: set of Char;
     Opcode: set of 0..7;
     Add: Boolean;
     Ch: Char;
```

Examples of assignments

```

Hue1 := [Red]; Hue2 := [];
Hue2 := Hue2 + [succ(Red)];
Letters := ['A','B','C','D','E','F','G','H','I',
            'J','K','L','M','N','O','P','Q','R',
            'S','T','U','V','W','X','Y','Z'];
Vowels := ['A','E','I','O','U'];
Consonants := Letters - Vowels;
Add := [2,3] <= Opcode

```

Set operations are intended to be relatively fast and can be used to eliminate more complicated tests. A simpler test for:

```

if (Ch='A') or (Ch='E') or (Ch='I') or (Ch='O') or (Ch='U')
then S

```

is:

```

if Ch in ['A','E','I','O','U'] then S

```

```

program Convert(Input,Output);
{ Program 8.1 - Read a sequence of digits and convert
  them to the integer they represent.
  Assume no leading sign. }
var
  Ch: Char;
  Digits: set of '0'..'9';
  Number: Integer;
begin
  Digits := ['0'..'9'] { initialize value of the set};
  Read(Input, Ch);
  Number := 0;
  while Ch in Digits do
    begin
      Number := Number * 10 + Ord(Ch) - Ord('0');
      Writeln(Output, Number);
      Read(Input, Ch)
    end
  { Ch contains the character following the integer }
end .

```

Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

```

4
43
432
4321

```

80 Pascal User Manual

```
program SetOperations(Output);
{ program 8.2 - Illustrate set operations. }
type
  Days = (Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat, Sun);
  Week = set of Days;
var
  FullWeek, Work, Free: Week;
  Day: Days;
procedure Check(W: Week)
  { procedures are introduced in Chapter 11 }
  var D: Days;
begin
  for D := Mon to Sun do
    if D in W then Write(Output, 'x')
    else Write(Output, ' ');
  Writeln(Output)
end { Check };
begin
  Work := [];  Free := [];  FullWeek := [Mon..Sun];
  Day := Sat;
  Free := [Day] + Free + [Sun];
  Check(Free);
  Work := FullWeek - Free;
  Check(Work);
  if Free <= FullWeek then Write(Output, 'O');
  if FullWeek >= Work then Write(Output, 'K');
  if not (Work >= Free) then Write(Output, ' Jack');
  if [Sat] <= Work then Write(Output, ' Forget it!');
  Writeln(Output)
end .
```

Produces as results:

```
oooooxx
xxxxxoo
OK Jack
```

8.C. On Program Development

Programming — in the sense of designing and formulating algorithms and data structures — is in general a complicated process requiring the mastery of numerous details and specific techniques. Only in exceptional cases will there be a single good solution. Usually, so many

solutions exist that the choice of an optimal program requires a thorough analysis not only of the available algorithms and computer systems but also of the way in which the program will most frequently be used.

Consequently, the construction of a program should consist of a sequence of deliberations, investigations, and design decisions. In the early stages, attention is best concentrated on the global problems, and the first draft of a solution may pay little attention to details. As the design process progresses, we can split the problem into sub-problems, and gradually give more consideration to the details of problem specification and to the characteristics of the available tools. The terms *stepwise refinement* [Reference 2] and *structured programming* [Reference 4] are associated with this approach.

The remainder of this chapter illustrates the development of a program by rewording (to be consistent with Pascal notation) an example C.A.R. Hoare presents in the book *Structured Programming* [Reference 4, “Notes on Data Structuring”].

The problem is to generate the prime numbers falling in the range $2..n$, where $n \geq 2$. After a comparison of the various algorithms, that of Eratosthenes’ sieve is chosen because of its simplicity (no multiplications or divisions).

The first formulation is descriptive.

1. Put all the numbers between 2 and n into the “sieve.”
2. Select and remove the smallest number remaining in the sieve.
3. Include this number in the “primes.”
4. Step through the sieve, removing all multiples of this number.
5. If the sieve is not empty, repeat steps 2–5.

Although initialization of variables is the first step in the execution of a program, it is often the last in the development process. Full comprehension of the algorithm is a prerequisite for making the proper initializations; updating these initializations with each program modification is necessary to keep the program running. (Unfortunately, updating is not always sufficient!).

Hoare chooses a set type with elements 2..n to represent both the sieve and the primes. The following is a slight variation of the program sketch he presents.

```
program Prime1;

{ Program 8.3 - Use sets to implement
  Sieve of Erastosthenes. }

const
  N = 10000;
type
  Positive = 1..MaxInt;
var
  Sieve, Primes: set of ..N;
  NextPrime, Multiple: Positive;
begin { initialize }
  Sieve := [2..N];  Primes := [];  NextPrime := 2;
repeat { find next prime }
  while not (NextPrime in Sieve) do
    NextPrime := Succ(NextPrime);
  Primes := Primes + [NextPrime];
  Multiple := NextPrime;
  while Multiple <= N do { eliminate }
    begin Sieve := Sieve - [Multiple];
      Multiple := Multiple + NextPrime;
    end
  until Sieve = []
end .
```

As an exercise Hoare proposes rewriting the program, so that the sets only represent the odd numbers. The following is one solution. Note the close correlation with the first solution.

```
program Prime2;

{ Program 8.4 - Use sets to implement Sieve of
  Erastosthenes; represent odd numbers only. }

const
  N = 5000 { N' = N div 2 };
type
  Positive = 1..MaxInt;
var
  Sieve, Primes: set of 2..N;
  NextPrime, Multiple, NewPrime: Positive;
```

```

begin { initialize }
  Sieve := [2..N]; Primes := []; NextPrime := 2;
repeat { find next prime }
  while not (NextPrime in Sieve) do
    NextPrime := Succ(NextPrime);
    Primes := Primes + [NextPrime];
    NewPrime := 2 * NextPrime - 1;
    Multiple := NextPrime;
    while Multiple <= N do { eliminate }
      begin Sieve := Sieve - [Multiple];
      Multiple := Multiple + NewPrime;
      end
    until Sieve = []
end .

```

A design goal for Pascal implementations is that all basic set operations execute relatively fast. Some implementations restrict the maximum size of sets according to their “wordlength,” so that each element of the base set is represented by one bit (0 meaning absence, 1 meaning presence). Most implementations would not accept a set with 10,000 elements. These considerations lead to an adjustment in the data representation, as shown in Program 8.5.

A large set can be represented as an array of smaller sets such that each “fits” into a few words (implementation dependent). The following program uses the second sketch as an abstract model of the algorithm. `Sieve` and `Primes` are redefined as arrays of sets; `Next` is defined as a record.

```

program Prime3(Output);

{ Program 8.5 - Generate the primes between 3..10000
  using a sieve containing odd integers in this range.
}

const
  SetSize = 128 { implementation-dependent; >= 2 };
  MaxElement = 127 { SetSize - 1 };
  SetParts = 39 { = 10000 div Setsize div 2 };

type
  Natural = 0..MaxInt;

```

84 Pascal User Manual

```
var
  Sieve, Primes:
    array [0..SetParts] of
      set of 0..MaxElement;
  NextPrime:
    record
      Part: 0 .. SetParts;
      Element: 0 .. MaxElement
    end;
  Multiple, NewPrime: Natural;
  P, N, Count: Natural;
  Empty: Boolean;
begin { initialize }
  for P := 0 to SetParts do begin
    Sieve[P] := [0 .. MaxElement]; Primes[P] := []
  end;
  Sieve[0] := Sieve[0] - [0]; Empty := False;
  NextPrime.Part := 0; NextPrime.Element := 1;

  with NextPrime do
    repeat { find next prime }
      while not (Element in Sieve[Part]) do
        Element := Succ(Element);
      Primes[Part] := Primes[Part] + [Element];
      NewPrime := 2 * Element + 1;
      Multiple := Element; P := Part;
      while P <= SetParts do { eliminate }
        begin Sieve[P] := Sieve[P] - [Multiple];
          P := P + Part * 2;
          Multiple := Multiple + NewPrime;
          while Multiple > MaxElement do
            begin P := P + 1;
              Multiple := Multiple - SetSize
            end
        end;
    if Sieve[Part] = [] then
      begin Empty := True; Element := 0 end;
    while Empty and (Part < SetParts) do
      begin
        Part := Part + 1; Empty := Sieve[Part] = []
      end
    until Empty;
```

```

Count := 0;
for P := 0 to SetParts do
  for N := 0 to MaxElement do
    if N in Primes[P] then
      begin
        Write(Output, 2 * N + 1 +
                  P * SetSize * 2:6);
        Count := Count + 1;
        if (Count mod 8) = 0 then Writeln(Output)
      end
    end.
  
```

Produces as results:

3	5	7	11	13	17	19	23
29	31	37	41	43	47	53	59
61	67	71	73	79	83	89	97
101	103	107	109	113	127	131	137
.
.
.
9871	9883	9887	9901	9907	9923	9929	9931
9941	9949	9967	9973	10007	10009	10037	10039
10061	10067	10069	10079	10091	10093	10099	10103
10111	10133	10139	10141	10151	10159	10163	10169

CHAPTER 9

File Types

In many ways the simplest structuring method is the sequence. In the data-processing profession the generally accepted term to describe a sequence is a *sequential file*. Pascal uses simply the word *file* to specify a structure consisting of a sequence of components — all of which have the same type. A special kind of file called a *textfile* consists of a sequence of variable-length lines of characters and forms the basis for legible communications between people and computer systems.

9.A. The File Structure

A natural ordering of the components is defined through the sequence, and at any instance only one component is directly accessible. The other components are accessible by progressing sequentially through the file. The number of components, called the *length* of the file, is not fixed by the file-type definition. This is a characteristic which clearly distinguishes the file from the array. A file with no components is said to be *empty*. A file type, therefore, differs from array, record, and set types because it is a sequential-access structure whose components all have the same type.

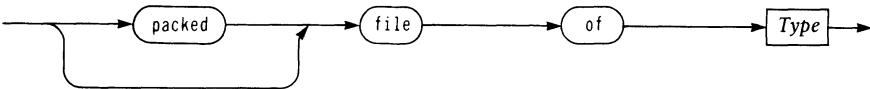


Figure 9.a Syntax diagram for *FileType*

The declaration of every file variable F automatically introduces a *buffer variable*, denoted by F^\uparrow , of the component type. It can be considered as an access to the file through which one can either inspect (read) the value of existing components or generate (write) new components, and which is automatically advanced by certain file operations. Assignment is not possible to entire file variables. Rather the buffer variable is used to append components one at a time, in a one-way (sequential) manner. The buffer variable becomes undefined if the file is positioned past its last component.

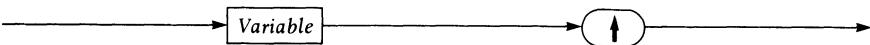


Figure 9.b Syntax diagram for *BufferVariable*

The sequential processing, varying length, and the existence of a buffer variable suggest that files may be associated with *secondary storage* and *peripherals*. Exactly how the components are allocated is implementation-dependent, but we can assume that only some of the components are present in primary storage at any one time, and only the component indicated by F^\uparrow is directly accessible.

When the buffer variable F^\uparrow is moved beyond the *end of a file* F , the predeclared Boolean function $\text{eof}(F)$ returns the value true, otherwise false. The basic file-handling procedures are:

Reset (F) initiates inspection (reading) of F by placing the file at its beginning. If F is not empty, the value of the first component of F is assigned to F^\uparrow and $\text{eof}(F)$ becomes false.

`Rewrite (F)` initiates generation (writing) of the file `F`. The current value of `:<` is replaced with the empty file. `Eof (F)` becomes true, and a new file may be written.

`Get (F)` advances the file to the next component and assigns the value of this component to the buffer variable `F↑`. If no next component exists, then `eof (F)` becomes true, and `F↑` becomes undefined. The effect of `Get (F)` is an error if `eof(F)` is true prior to its execution or if `F` is being generated.

`Put (F)` appends the value of the buffer variable `F↑` to the file `F`. The effect is an error unless prior to execution the predicate `eof (F)` is true. `eof (F)` remains true, and `F↑` becomes undefined. `Put (F)` is an error if `F` is being inspected.

In principle, all the operations of sequential–file generation and inspection can be expressed entirely in terms of the four primitive file operators and the predicate `eof`. In practice, it is often natural to combine the operation of advancing the file position with the access to the buffer variable. We therefore introduce the two procedures `Read` and `Write` as follows:

`Read (F, X)` (for `X`, a variable) is equivalent to

```
begin
  X := F↑; Get (F)
end
```

`Write (F, E)` (for `E`, an expression) is equivalent to

```
begin
  F↑ := E; Put ('')
end
```

`Read` and `Write` are in fact special procedures extended to accept a variable number of actual parameters (`v1...vn` are variables and `E1...En` are expressions):

`Read (F, v1, ..., vn)` is equivalent to the statement

```
begin Read (F, V ); ... ; Read (F, Vn) end
```

`Write(F,E1,...,En)` is equivalent to the statement

```
begin Write(F,E1);...;Write(F,En) end
```

The advantage of using these procedures lies not only in brevity, but also in conceptual simplicity, since the existence of a buffer variable `F↑`, which is sometimes undefined, may be ignored. The buffer variable may, however, be useful as a “lookahead” device.

Examples of declarations

```
var Data: file of Integer;
A: Integer;

var Plotfile: file of
    record
        C: Color;
        Len: Natural
    end;

var Club: file of Person;
P: Person;
```

Examples of statements with files

```
A := Data↑; Get(Data)

Read(Data,A)

Plotfile↑.C := Red;
Plotfile↑.Len := 17; Put(Plotfile)

Club↑ := P; Put(Club)

Write(Club,P)
```

Files may be local to a program (or local to a procedure), or they may already exist outside the program. The latter are called *external files*. External files are passed as parameters in the program heading (see Chapter 3) into the program.

The next two programs illustrate the use of files. Program 9.1 reprocesses a file of real numbers representing measurements produced by an instrument or another program. Program 9.2 operates on two files

representing sequences of persons ordered by last name.

F_1, F_2, \dots, F_m and G_1, G_2, \dots, G_n

such that $F(I+1) \geq F(I)$ and $G(J+1) \geq G(J)$, for all I, J and merges them into one ordered file H such that

$H(K+1) \geq H(K)$ for $K = 1, 2, \dots, (M+N-1)$.

```

program Normalize(DataIn, DataOut);

{ Program 9.1 - Normalize a file of measurements
  generated as real numbers from an
  instrument or another program. }

type
  Measurements = file of Real;
  Natural = 0..MaxInt;
var
  DataIn, DataOut: Measurements;
  Sum, Mean,
  SumOfSquares, StandardDeviation: Real;
  N: Natural;
begin
  Reset(DataIn); N := 0;
  Sum := 0.0; SumOfSquares := 0.0;
  while not eof(DataIn) do
    begin N := N + 1;
    Sum := Sum + DataIn↑;
    SumOfSquares := SumOfSquares + Sqr(DataIn↑);
    Get(DataIn)
    end;
  Mean := Sum / N;
  StandardDeviation := Sqrt( (SumOfSquares / N) -
                           Sqr(Mean) );
  Reset(DataIn); Rewrite(DataOut);
  while not Eof(DataIn) do
    begin
      DataOut↑ := (DataIn↑ - Mean) / StandardDeviation;
      Put(DataOut); Get(DataIn)
    end
end { Normalize }.

```

```

program MergeFiles(F,G,H);

{ Program 9.2 - Merge files F and G sorted by
  last name into H. }

type
  Natural = 0..MaxInt;
  String15 = packed array [1..15] of Char;
  Person = record
    Name:
    record
      First, Last: String15;
    end;
    Height: Natural { centimeters } ;
  end;
var
  F, G, H: file of Person;
  EndFG: Boolean;

begin
  Reset(F);  Reset(G);  Rewrite(H);
  EndFG := Eof(F) or Eof(G);
  while not EndFG do
    begin
      if F^.Name.Last < G^.Name.Last then
        begin  H^ := F^;  Get(F);  EndFG := Eof(F)
        end
      else
        begin  H^ := G^;  Get(G);  EndFG := Eof(G)
        end;
      Put(H)
    end;
  while not Eof(G) do
    begin
      Write(H, G^);  Get(G)
    end;
  while not Eof(F) do
    begin
      Write(H, F^);  Get(F)
    end
  end .

```

9.B. Textfiles

Textfiles are files that consist of a sequence of characters that is subdivided into variable-length *lines*. The predefined type `Text` is used to declare textfiles.

We may consider the type `Text` as being defined over the base type `Char` extended by a (hypothetical) line terminator or end-of-line marker. Therefore type `Text` is *not* equivalent to (Packed) file of `Char`. This end-of-line marker can be both recognized and generated by the following special textfile procedures.

`Writeln(F)` terminates the current line of the textfile `F`.

`Readln(F)` skips to the beginning of the next line of the textfile `F` (F^\uparrow becomes the first character of the next line).

`Eoln(F)` a Boolean function indicating whether the end of the current line in the textfile `F` has been reached. (If true, F^\uparrow corresponds to the position of a line separator, but F^\uparrow is a *blank*.)

If `F` is a textfile and `Ch` a character variable,

`Write(F, Ch)` is an abbreviation for
`begin F^\uparrow := Ch; F.t(F) end`

`Read(F, Ch)` assigns the character at the current position of file `F` or the value of F^\uparrow to `Ch`, followed by a `Get(F)`. The choice is implementation-dependent.

`Input` and `Output` are the names of two standard textfile variables used as program parameters for legible reading and writing of text. Chapter 12 describes them in detail together with extended forms of the procedures `Read`, `Write`, `Readln`, and `Writeln`.

The following program schemata use the above conventions to demonstrate some typical operations performed on textfiles.

1. *Writing a textfile Y*. Assume that (\cdot) computes a (next) character and assigns it to parameter `C`. If the current line is to be terminated, a Boolean variable `B1` is set to true; and if the text is to be terminated, `B2` is set to true.

```

Rewrite(Y);
repeat
    repeat P(C); Write(Y,C)
    until B1;
    Writeln(Y)
until B2

```

2. *Reading a textfile X.* Assume that $Q(C)$ denotes the processing of a (next) character C . R denotes an action to be executed upon encountering the end of a line.

```

Reset(X);
while not eof(X) do
begin
    while not eoln(X) do
        begin Read(X,C); Q(C)
        end;
    R; Readln(X)
end

```

3. *Copying a textfile X to a textfile Y while preserving the line structure of X.*

```

Reset(X); Rewrite(Y);
While not eof(X) do
begin { copy a line }
    while not eoln(X) do
        begin Read(X,C); Write(Y,C)
        end;
    Readln(X); Writeln(Y)
end

```

A note on implementation: A straightforward method of representing the end-of-line marker is by using control characters. For instance, in the ASCII character set the two characters, `cr` (carriage return) and `lf` (line feed), conventionally are used to mark the end of a line. However, some computer systems use a character set devoid of such control characters; this implies that other methods for indicating the end of a line must be employed.

CHAPTER 10

Pointer Types

So far we have talked about types that provide for the declaration of statically allocated variables. A *static variable* is one that is declared in a program and subsequently denoted by its identifier. It is called static, because it exists (i.e., memory is allocated for it) during the entire execution of the block (program, procedure, or function) to which it is local. A variable may, on the other hand, be created and destroyed *dynamically* during the execution of a block (without any correlation to the static structure of the program). Such a variable is consequently called a *dynamic variable* or an *identified variable*.

10.A. Pointer Variables and Identified (Dynamic) Variables

Identified (dynamic) variables do not occur in an explicit variable declaration and cannot be accessed directly by identifiers. Instead they are created and destroyed by using the predeclared procedures `New` and `Dispose`, and they are identified by pointer values (which might be implemented as nothing more than the storage addresses of the newly allocated variables). Pointer values must be assigned to previously existing pointer variables having the appropriate pointer type.

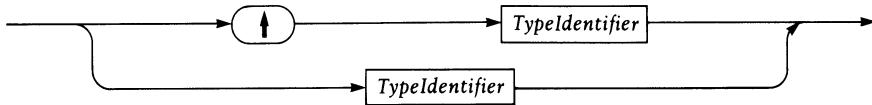


Figure 10.a Syntax diagram for *PointerType*

The description of a pointer type P specifies a domain type T :

```
type P = ↑T;
```

The set of pointer values of type P consists of an unbounded number of *identifying values*, each of which identifies a variable of type T , together with the special value `nil` that does not identify any variable.

An identified (dynamic) variable is accessed by the pointer value that identifies it; in particular, if `Ptr` is declared as:

```
var Ptr: P;
```

and an identifying value has been assigned to `Ptr`, then the construct $\text{Ptr} \uparrow$ is used to denote the identified variable.

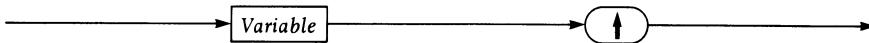


Figure 10.b Syntax diagram for *IdentifiedVariable*

$\text{Ptr} \uparrow$ is an error if `Ptr` is `nil` or undefined.

Use `New(Ptr)` to create or allocate an identified variable of type T and to assign its identifying value to `Ptr`. Use `Dispose(Ptr)` to destroy or deallocate the variable identified by the value of `Ptr`; `Ptr` becomes undefined after `Dispose`.

Pointers are a simple tool for the construction of complicated and flexible (and even recursive) data structures. If the type T is a record structure that contains one or more fields of type P , then structures equivalent to arbitrary finite graphs may be built, where the identified variables represent the nodes, and the pointers are the edges.

Program 10.1 illustrates the use of pointers to maintain a waiting list of clients. (Procedures are discussed in the next chapter.)

```
program WaitingList(Input,Output);
{ Program 10.1 - Simulate .. client waiting list;
  serve the first 3. }

const
  NameLength = 1..NameLength;
  NameString= packed array [NameIndex] of Char;
  Natural = 0..MaxInt;
  ClientPointer = ^Client;
  Client =
    record
      Name: NameString;
      Nxt: ClientPointer
    end;
var
  Head, Tail: ClientPointer;
  Name: packed array [NameIndex] of Char;

procedure ReadName;
  var c: NameIndex;
begin
  for c := 1 to NameLength do
    if Eoln(Input) then Name[c] := ' '
    else begin
      Read(Input,Name[c]);
      Write(Output,Name[c]);
    end;
  Readln(Input);  Writeln(Output)
end { ReadName };

procedure AddClientToList;
  var NewClient: ClientPointer;
begin
  New(NewClient);
  if Head = nil then Head := NewClient
  else Tail^.Nxt := NewClient;
  NewClient^.Name := Name;  NewClient^.Nxt := nil;
  Tail := NewClient
end { AddClientToList };

procedure ServeClient(HowMany: Natural);
```

```

        while (HowMany > 0) and (Head <> nil) do begin
            ClientToServe := Head; Head := Head^.Nxt;
            Writeln(ClientToServe^.Name);
            Dispose(ClientToServe);
            HowMany := HowMany - 1
        end
    end { ServeClients };

begin { WaitingList }
    Head := nil;
    while not Eof(Input) do begin
        ReadName; AddClientToList
    end;
    Writeln(Output);
    ServeClients(3)
end { WaitingList } .

```

Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

```

Hikita
Balasubramanyam
Nagel
Lecarme
Bello
Pokrovsky
Barron
Yuen
Sale
Price

Hikita
Balasubramanyam
Nagel

```

As another example, consider the construction of a “data base” for a group of people. Assume the persons are represented by records as defined in Chapter 7. We may then form a chain or linked list of such records by adding a field of a pointer type and use the list for searching and insertion operations:

```

type Link = ^Person;
...
Person = record
    ...
    Next: Link;
end;

```

A linked list of n persons can be represented as in Figure 10.c. Each box represents one person.

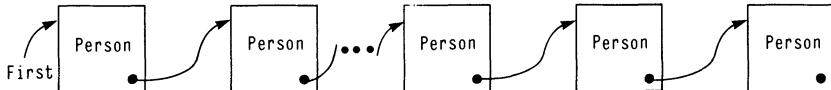


Figure 10.c Linked List

A variable of type `Link`, called `First`, points to the first person of the list. The `Next` field of the last person in the list is `nil`. Note in passing that

`First^.Next^.Next`

points to the third person in the list. If we assume that, for example, we can read integer data representing the heights of people, then the following code could have been used to construct the above chain.

```

var First, P: Link; H,: Integer;
      ...
First := nil;
for I := 1 to N do
begin Read(H); New(P);
  P^.Next := First;
  P^.Height := H; InitializeOtherFields(P^);
  First := P
end

```

Note that the list grows backwards. For purposes of access, we will introduce another variable, say `Pt`, of type `Link` and allow it to move freely through the list. To demonstrate selection, we assume there is a `Person` with `Height` equal to 175 and access this `Person`. The strategy is to advance `Pt` via `Link` until the desired person is located:

```

Pt := First;
while Pt^.Height <> 175 do Pt := Pt^.Next

```

In words this says, “Let `Pt` point to the first person. While the height of the person pointed to (identified) by `Pt` is not 175, assign to `Pt` the pointer value stored in the `Next` field (also a pointer variable) of the record that `Pt` currently identifies.”

This simple search statement works only if one is sure that there is at least one person with Height equal to 175 on the list. But is this realistic? A check for failing to find 175 before reaching the end of the list is mandatory unless you can guarantee it. We might first try the following solution:

```
Pt := First;
while (Pt <> nil) and (Pt↑.Height <> 175) do
    Pt := Pt↑.Next
```

But recall Section 4.A. If Pt = nil, the variable Pt[↑], referenced in the second factor of the termination condition, *does not exist* at all, and referencing it is an error. The following are two possible solutions which treat this situation correctly:

```
(1)  Pt:= First; B := true
      while (Pt <> nil) and B do
          if Pt↑.Height = 175 then B := false
          else Pt := Pt↑.Next

(2)  Pt := First;
      while Pt <> nil do
          begin if Pt↑.Height = 175 then goto 13;
                  Pt := Pt↑.Next
          end;
13:
```

10.B. New and Dispose

To pose another problem, say we wish to add the sample person to the data base. First a variable must be allocated, and its identifying value obtained by means of the predeclared procedure New.

New(P) a procedure that allocates a new identified (dynamic) variable P[↑] having as its type the domain type of P, creates a new identifying pointer value having the type of P, and assigns it to P. If P[↑] is a variant record, New(P) allocates enough space to accommodate all variants.

New(P,C1,...,Cn) allocates a new identified (dynamic) variable P[↑] having the variant record type of P with tag field values C1,...,Cn for n nested variant parts, creates a new identifying pointer value having the type of P, and assigns it to P.

Warning: if a record variable $P \uparrow$ is created by the second form of `New`, then this variable must not change its variant during program execution. Assignment to the entire variable is an error; however one can assign to the components of $P \uparrow$.

The first step in programming a solution to our problem posed above, is to introduce a pointer variable. Let it be called `NewP`. Then the statement

```
New (NewP)
```

allocates a new variable of type `Person`.

Next the new variable, referenced by the pointer `NewP`, is to be inserted after the person referenced by `Pt`. See Figure 10.d.

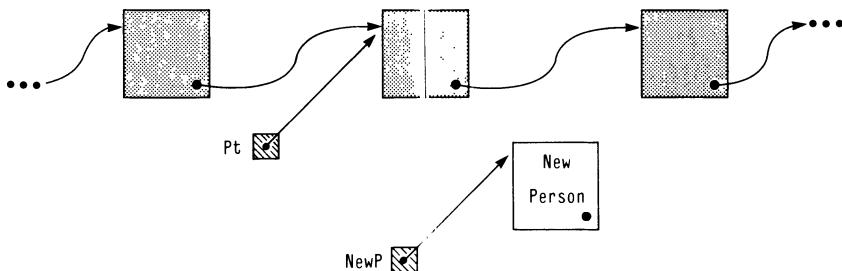


Figure 10.d Linked List Before Insertion

Insertion is a simple matter of changing the pointers:

```
NewP $\uparrow$ .Next := Pt $\uparrow$ .Next;  
Pt $\uparrow$ .Next := NewP
```

Figure 10.e illustrates the result.

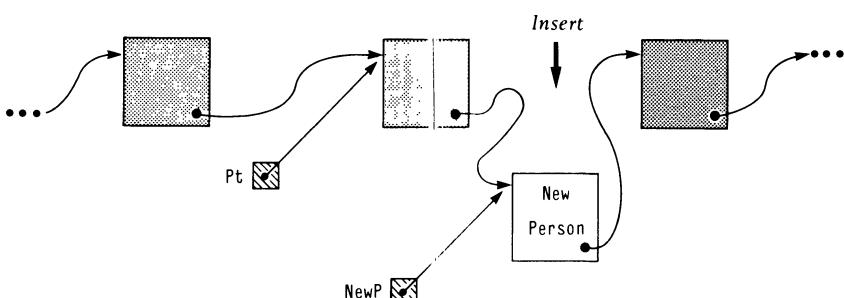


Figure 10.e Linked List After Insertion

Deletion of the person following the auxiliary pointer `Pt` is accomplished in the single instruction:

```
Pt↑.Next := Pt↑.Next↑.Next
```

It is often practical to process a list using two pointers — a lookahead and a trailer, one following the other. In the case of deletion, it is then likely that one pointer — say `P1↑` — precedes the member to be deleted, and `P2` points to that member. Deletion can then be expressed in the single instruction:

```
P1↑.Next := P2↑.Next
```

You are, however, warned that deletions in this manner will sometimes result in the loss of usable (free) storage. A possible remedy is to maintain an explicit list of “deleted” members, pointed to by a variable `Free`. New variables will then be taken from this list (if it is not empty) instead of using the procedure `New`. A deletion of a list member now becomes a transfer of that member from the list to the free-member list.

```
P1↑.Next := P2↑.Next;  
P2↑.Next := Free;  
Free := P2
```

Finally, by using the predeclared procedure `Dispose`, the management of deleted members can be left to the Pascal implementation.

`Dispose(Q)` deallocates the identified variable `Q↑` and destroys the identifying value `Q`. It is an error if `Q` is `nil` or undefined. The value `Q` must have been created with the first form of `New`.

`Dispose(Q, K1, ..., Kn)` deallocates the identified variant record variable `Q↑` with active variants selected by `K1, ..., Kn` and destroys the identifying value `Q`. It is an error if `Q` is `nil` or undefined. The value `Q` must have been created with the second form of `New` and `K1, ..., Kn` must select the same variants selected when `Q` was created.

Chapter 11 presents Programs 11.6 and 11.7 illustrating the traversal of tree structures which are built using pointer types.

Procedures and Functions

As we grow in the art of computer programming, we construct programs in a sequence of *refinement steps*. At each step we break our task into a number of subtasks, thereby defining a number of partial programs. To camouflage this structure is undesirable. The concepts of the *procedure* and *function* allow you to display the subtasks as explicit subprograms.

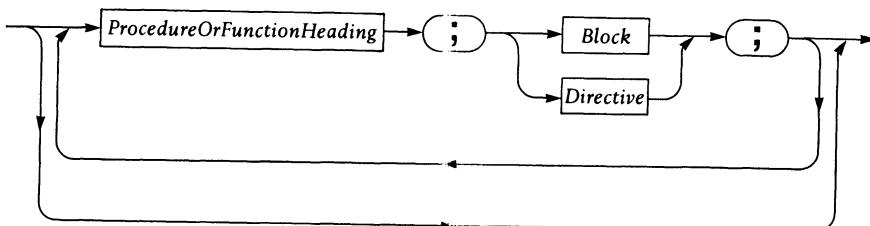


Figure 11.a Syntax diagram for *ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart*

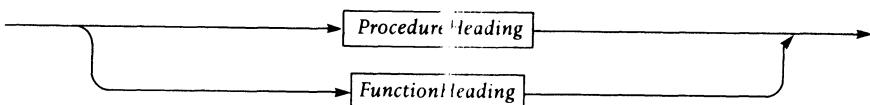


Figure 11.b Syntax diagram for *ProcedureOrFunctionHeading*

11.A. Procedures

Throughout the example programs in this User Manual, the predeclared procedures `Read`, `Readln`, `Write`, and `Writeln` are used. This section describes how to build your own “programmer-declared” procedures; in fact, Programs 8.2 and 10.1 use them.

The *procedure declaration* serves to define a program part and to associate it with an identifier, so that it can be activated by a *procedure statement*. The declaration has the same form as a program, except it is introduced by a *procedure heading* instead of a program heading.

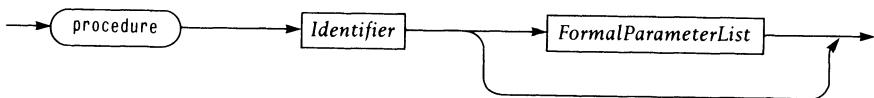


Figure 11.c Syntax diagram for *ProcedureHeading*

Recall Program 6.1 that found the minimum and maximum values in a list of integers. As an extension, say that `n` increments are added to `A[1]...A[n]`, then `Min` and `Max` are again computed. The resulting program, which employs a procedure to determine `Min` and `Max`, follows.

```

program MinMax2(Input,Output);

{ Program 11.1 - Extend Program 6.1 by introducing a
  procedure. }

const
  MaxSize = 20;
type
  ListSize = 1..MaxSize;
var
  Increment: Integer;
  Item: ListSize;
  A: array [ListSize] of Integer;

procedure MinMax;
  var
    Item: ListSize;
    Min, Max, First, Second: Integer;
  
```

```

begin
  Min := A[1];  Max := Min;  Item := 2;
  while Item < MaxSize do begin
    First := A[Item];  Second:= A[Item+1];
    if First > Second then begin
      if First > Max then Max := First;
      if Second < Min then Min := Second
    end else begin
      if Second > Max then Max := Second;
      if First < Min then Min := First
    end;
    Item := Item + 2
  end;
  if Item = MaxSize then
    if A[MaxSize] > Max then Max := A[MaxSize]
    else
      if A[MaxSize] < Min then Min := A[MaxSize];
  Writeln(Output, Max, :11); Writeln(Output)
end {MinMax};

begin
  for Item := 1 to MaxSize do begin
    Read(Input, A[Item]);  Write(Output, A[Item] :4)
  end;
  Writeln(Output);
  MinMax;
  for Item := 1 to MaxSize do begin
    Read(Input, Increment);
    A[Item] := A[Item] + Increment;
    Write(Output, A[Item] : )
  end;
  Writeln(Output);
  MinMax
end .

```

Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

```

-1   -3    4     7     8    54    2     -5    3     9     9     -6
45    79    79     3     1     1     5
                      79          -6
        44    40     7    15     9    88    1     -4     7    43    12    17    -7
48    59    39     9     7     7    12
                      88          -7

```

Although simple, this program illustrates many points:

1. The simplest form of the *procedure heading*, namely:

procedure *Identifier*;

2. *Blocks*. A procedure is a block with a name. The program block is `MinMax2` and the procedure block is `MinMax`. In this case the part of the Program 6.1 used only to find the minimum and maximum values is isolated and given the name `MinMax`. Just like the program block, the block constituting a procedure has a declaration part which introduces the objects local to the procedure.

3. *Local Variables*. Local to procedure `MinMax` are the variables `Item`, `First`, `Second`, `Min` and `Max`; assignments to these variables have no effect on the program outside the scope of `MinMax`. Local variables are undefined at the beginning of the statement part each time the procedure is activated.

4. *Global Variables*. `A`, `Item` and `Increment` are global variables declared in the main program. They may be referenced throughout the program (e.g., the first assignment in `MinMax` is `Min := A[1]`).

5. *Scope*. Note that `Item` is the name for both a global and a local variable. These are not the same variable! A procedure may refer to any variable non-local to it, or it may choose to redefine the name. If a variable name is redeclared, the new name/type association is then valid for the scope of the defining procedure, and the non-local variable of that name (unless passed as a parameter) is no longer available within the procedure scope. Assignment to the local variable `Item` (e.g., `Item := Item + 2`) has no effect upon the global variable `Item`, and because within `MinMax` the local `Item` has precedence, the global `Item` is effectively inaccessible.

It is a good programming practice to declare every identifier which is not referred to outside the procedure, as strictly local to that procedure. Not only is this good documentation, but it also provides added security. For example, `Item` could have been left as a global variable; but then a later extension to the program which activated procedure

`MinMax` within a loop controlled by `Item` would cause incorrect computation.

6. The *Procedure Statement*. In this example, the statement `MinMax` in the main program activates the procedure.

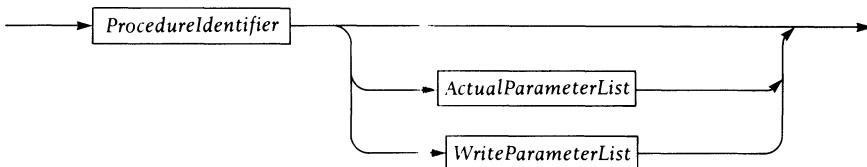


Figure 11.d Syntax diagram for *ProcedureStatement*

Examining Program 11.1 in more detail, note that `MinMax` is activated twice. By formulating the program part as a procedure — i.e., by not explicitly writing this program part twice — you can conserve not only your typing time, but also the memory (space) used by the program. The static code is stored only once, and the space for local variables is dynamically activated only during the execution of the procedure (created at the beginning and destroyed at the end).

You should not hesitate, however, from formulating an action as a procedure — even when called only once — if doing so enhances the readability of a program. In general, shorter blocks are easier to understand than long ones. Defining development steps as procedures makes a more communicable and verifiable program.

11.A.1 Parameter lists

Often necessary with the decomposition of a problem into subprograms is the introduction of new variables to represent the arguments and the results of the subprograms. The purpose of such variables should be clear from the program text.

Program 11.2 extends the above example to compute the minimum and maximum value of an array in a more general sense. This illustrates several further points about procedures.

1. The second form of the *procedure heading*, i.e., one with a parameter list.
2. *Formal Parameters*. The *parameter list* gives the name of each formal parameter followed by its type. `MinMax` has `L`, `Min`, and `Max` as formal parameters. The formal parameter list opens a new scope for the parameters.
3. *Actual Parameters*. Note a correspondence between the procedure heading and the procedure statement. The latter contains a list of *actual parameters*, which are substituted for the corresponding formal parameters that are defined in the

```

program MinMax3(Input,Output);
{ Program 11.2 - Modify Program 11.1 for two lists. }
const
  MaxSize = 20;
type
  ListSize = 1..MaxSize;
  List = array [ListSize] of Integer;
var
  Item: ListSize;
  A, B: List;
  MinA, MinB, MaxA, MaxB: Integer;
procedure MinMax(var L: List; var Min, Max: Integer);
  var
    Item: ListSize;
    First, Second: Integer;
begin
  Min := L[1];  Max := Min;  Item := 2;
  while Item < MaxSize do begin
    First := L[Item];  Second:= L[Item+1];
    if First > Second then begin
      if First > Max then Max := First;
      if Second < Min then Min := Second
    end else begin
      if Second > Max then Max := Second;
      if First < Min then Min := First
    end;
    Item := Item + 2
  end;
  if Item = MaxSize then
    if L[MaxSize] > Max then Max := L[MaxSize]
  else

```

```

        if L[MaxSize] < Mi: then Min := L[MaxSize]
end { MinMax };
procedure ReadWrite(var L: List);
begin
  for Item := 1 to MaxSize do begin
    Read(Input, L[item]);
    Write(Output, L[item]:4)
  end;
  Writeln(Output)
end { ReadWrite };
begin { main program }
  ReadWrite(A);
  MinMax(A, MinA, MaxA);
  Writeln(Output, MinA, MaxA, MaxA - MinA);
  Writeln(Output);
  ReadWrite(B);
  MinMax(B, MinB, MaxB);
  Writeln(Output, MinB, MaxB, MaxB - MinB);
  Writeln(Output);
  Writeln(Output);
  Writeln(Output, abs(MinA - MinB), abs(MaxA - MaxB));
  Writeln(Output);
  for Item := 1 to MaxSize do begin
    A[item] := A[item] + B[item];
    Write(Output, A[item]:4)
  end;
  Writeln(Output);
  MinMax(A, MinA, MaxA);
  Writeln(Output, MinA, MaxA, MaxA - MinA)
end .

```

Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

-1	-3	4	7	8	54	2	-5	3	9	9	9	-6
45	79	79	3	1	1	1	5					
			-6		79			35				
45	43	3	8	1	34	-	1	4	34	3	8	-1
3	-2	-4	6	6	6	7						
			-8		45			53				
			2		34							
44	40	7	15	9	88	1	-4	7	43	12	17	-7
48	77	75	9	7	7	12						
			-7		88			95				

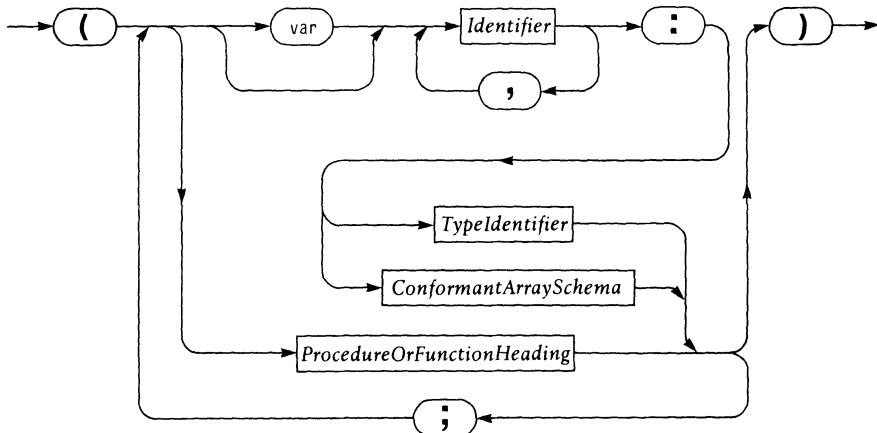


Figure 11.e Syntax diagram for *FormalParameterList*

procedure declaration. The correspondence is established by the positioning of the parameters in the lists of actual and formal parameters. Parameters provide a substitution mechanism that allows a process to be repeated with a variation of its arguments (e.g., `MinMax` is activated twice to scan array `A` and once to scan array `B`). There exist four kinds of parameters: value parameters, variable parameters, procedural parameters (described in Section 11.A.4), and functional parameters (described in Section 11.B.1).

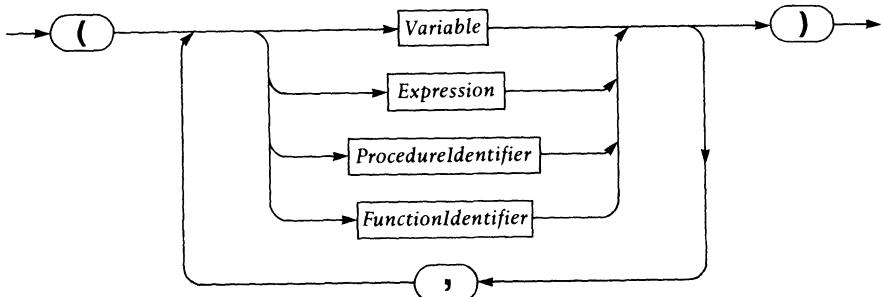


Figure 11.f Syntax diagram for *ActualParameterList*

4. *Variable Parameters.* Procedure `MinMax` shows the case of the *variable parameter*. The actual parameter *must be a variable*; the corresponding formal parameter must be preceded by the symbol `var` and becomes a synonym for this actual variable during the entire execution of the procedure. Any operation involving the formal parameter is then performed directly upon the actual parameter. Use variable parameters to represent the *results* of a procedure — as is the case for `Min` and `Max` in Program 11.2. Furthermore, if $x_1 \dots x_n$ are the actual variables that correspond to the formal variable parameters $v_1 \dots v_n$, then $x_1 \dots x_n$ should be *distinct* variables. All address calculations are done at the time of the procedure activation. Hence, if a variable is a component of an array, its index expression is evaluated when the procedure is activated. Note that a component of a packed structure or a tag field in a variant record must not appear as an actual variable parameter, thus avoiding implementation problems for calculating addresses.

When no symbol heads the parameter section, the parameter(s) of this section are said to be *value parameter(s)*. In this case the actual parameter *must be an expression* (of which a variable is a simple case). The corresponding formal parameter represents a local variable in the activated procedure. As its initial value, this variable receives the current value of the corresponding actual parameter (i.e., the value of the expression at the time of the procedure activation). The procedure may then change the value of this variable through an assignment; this cannot, however, affect the value of the actual parameter. Hence, a value parameter can never represent a result of a computation. Note that file parameters or structured variables with files as components may not be specified as actual value parameters, as this would constitute an assignment.

The difference in the effects of value and variable parameters is shown in Program 11.3.

The following table summarizes the correct kinds of parameters for formal and actual parameter lists.

parameter kind	formal parameter	actual parameter
<i>value parameter</i>	variable identifier	expression
<i>variable parameter</i>	variable identifier	variable
<i>procedural parameter</i>	procedure heading	procedure identifier
<i>functional parameter</i>	function heading	function identifier

```

program Parameters(Output);

{ Program 11.3 - Illustrate value and var parameters.
}

var
  A, B: Integer;

procedure Add1(X: Integer; var Y: Integer);
begin
  X := X + 1;  Y := Y + 1;  Writeln(Output,X,Y)
end { Add1 };

begin
  A := 0;  B := 0;  Add1(A,B);
  Writeln(Output,A,B)
end { Parameters }.

```

Produces as results:

1	1
0	1

In procedure `MinMax` of Program 11.2 none of the values in array `L` are altered; i.e., `L` is not a result. Consequently `L` could have been defined as a value parameter without affecting the end result. To understand why this was not done, it is helpful to look at the implementation.

A *procedure activation* allocates a new area for each value parameter; this represents the local variable. The current value of the actual parameter is “copied” into this location; exit from the procedure simply releases this storage.

If a parameter is not used to transfer a result of the procedure, a value parameter is generally preferred. The accessing may be more efficient, and you are protected against mistakenly altering the data. However in the case where a parameter is of a structured type (e.g., an

array), you should be cautious, for the copying operation is relatively expensive, and the amount of storage needed to hold the copy may be large. In the example, because each component in the array `L` is accessed only once, it is desirable to define the parameter as a variable parameter.

We may change the dimension of the array simply by redefining `MaxSize`. To make the program applicable for an array of reals, we need only change the type and variable definitions; the statements are not dependent upon integer data.

11.A.2. Conformant–array parameters

Another way to pass different–sized arrays to a procedure or function is to use a conformant–array parameter as a variable or value parameter in the formal parameter list. Caution: Conformant–array parameters are an optional feature in the ISO Pascal Standard. Some implementations will not support them.

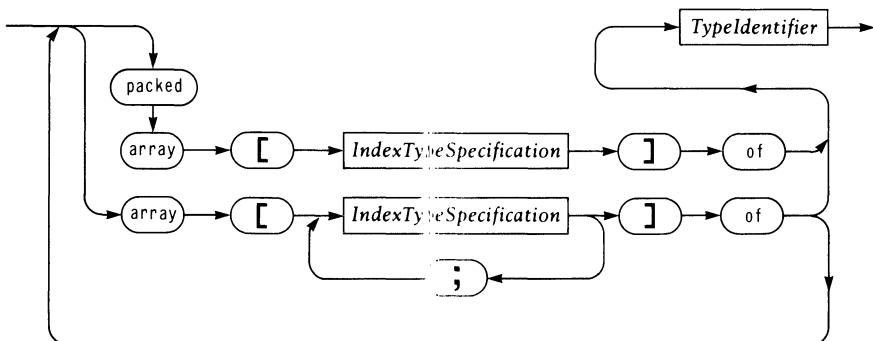


Figure 11.g Syntax diagram for *ConformantArraySchema*

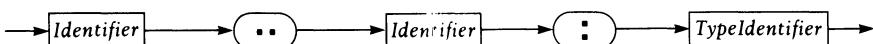


Figure 11.h Syntax diagram for *IndexTypeSpecification*

Conformant arrays specify the actual bounds of each dimension of the array as bound identifiers which are a kind of read-only variable. The index type of the actual array parameter must be compatible with the type in the conformant array's index type specification. The smallest and largest values of that index type must lie within the closed interval of the type in the index type specification. The component types must be the same, and if the component type of the conformant–array parameter is another conformant–array parameter then the component type of the actual array parameter must conform to it.

A conformant–array parameter may be packed only in its last dimension. Actual parameters to value conformant–array parameters may be variables or strings.

Program `MatrixMul` of Chapter 6 is rewritten as Program 11.4 to use conformant–array parameters. Program 11.7 passes different–length strings to a formal conformant–array parameter.

11.A.3 Recursive procedures

The use of a procedure identifier within the text of the procedure itself implies *recursive* execution of the procedure. Problems whose definition is naturally recursive, often lend themselves to recursive solutions. An example is Program 11.5.

The task is to construct a program to convert expressions into postfix form (Polish notation). This is done by constructing an individual conversion procedure for each syntactic construct (expression, term, factor). As these syntactic constructs are defined recursively, their corresponding procedures may activate themselves recursively.

Given as data are the symbolic expressions:

```
(a+b) * (c-d)
a+b*c-d
( a      * b) *   c-d
a+b*(c-d)
a * a * a * a
b+c*(d+c*a*a)*b+a .
```

```

program MatrixMul2 (Input, Output);
{ Program 11.4 - Rewrite program 6.3 using a
  procedure with component-array parameters. }

const
  M = 4;  P = 3;  N = 2;

type
  Positive = 1..MaxInt;

var
  A: array [1..M, 1..P] of Integer;
  B: array [1..P, 1..N] of Integer;
  C: array [1..M, 1..N] of Integer;

procedure ReadMatrix
  (var X: array [LoRow..HiRow: Positive;
                 LoCol..HiCol: Positive] of Integer);

  var
    Row, Col: Positive;
begin
  for Row := LoRow to HiRow do
    for Col := LoCol to HiCol do
      Read(Input, X[Row, Col]);
end { ReadMatrix };

procedure WriteMatrix
  (var X: array [LoRow..HiRow: Positive;
                 LoCol..HiCol: Positive] of Integer);

  var
    Row, Col: Positive;
begin
  for Row := LoRow to HiRow do begin
    for Col := LoCol to HiCol do
      Write(Output, X[Row, Col]);
    Writeln(Output)
  end
end { WriteMatrix };

procedure Multiply
  (var A: array [LoARow..HiARow: Positive;
                 LoACol..HiACol: Positive] of Integer;
   var B: array [LoBRow..HiBRow: Positive;
                 LoBCol..HiBCol: Positive] of Integer;
   var C: array [LoCRow..HiCRow: Positive;
                 LoCCol..HiCol: Positive] of Integer);

```

```

var
  Sum: Integer;
  I, J, K: Positive;
begin
  if (LoARow <> 1) or (LoACol <> 1) or
    (LoBRow <> 1) or (LoBCol <> 1) or
    (LoCRow <> 1) or (LoCCol <> 1) or
    (HiARow <> HiCRow) or (HiACol <> HiBRow) or
    (HiBCol <> HiCCol) then {error}
  else
    for I := 1 to HiCRow do begin
      for J := 1 to HiCCol do begin
        Sum := 0;
        for K := 1 to HiACol do
          Sum := Sum + A[I,K] * B[K,J];
        C[I,J] := Sum
      end;
    end
  end { Multiply };

begin
  ReadMatrix(A);
  WriteMatrix(A);
  ReadMatrix(B);
  WriteMatrix(B);
  Multiply(A,B,C);
  WriteMatrix(C)
end .

```

Produces as results:

1	2	3
-2	0	2
1	0	1
-1	2	-3
-1	3	
-2	2	
2	1	
1	10	
6	-4	
1	4	
-9	-2	

which are formed according to the EBNF below. A period terminates the input.

Expression = Term { (“+” | “-”) Term } .

Term = Factor { “” Factor } .*

Factor = Identifier (“(Expression)” .

Identifier = Letter .

```
program PostFix(Input,Output);
{ Program 11.5 - Convert an infix expression to
  Polish postfix form. }
label 13 { premature end of file };
var
  Ch: Char;
procedure Find;
begin
  if Eof(Input) then goto 13;
  repeat Read(Input, Ch);
    until (Ch <> ' ') or EoI(Input)
end { Find };
procedure Expression;
var
  Op: Char;
procedure Term;
procedure Factor;
begin
  if Ch = '(' then
    begin Find; Expression; { Ch = ')' } end
  else
    Write(Output, Ch);
  Find
end { Factor };
begin { Term }
  Factor;
  while Ch = '*' do
    begin Find; Factor; Write(Output, '*') end
end { Term };
begin { Expression }
  Term;
  while (Ch = '+') or (Ch = '-') do
    begin
      Op := Ch; Find; Term; Write(Output, Op)
    end
end { Expression };
```

```

begin { PostFix }
  Find;
  repeat
    Expression;
    Writeln(Output)
  until Ch = '.';
13:
end { PostFix } .

```

Produces as results:

```

ab+cd-*  

abc*+d-  

ab+c*d-  

abcd-*+  

aa*a*a*  

bcdca*a*+*b*+a+

```

A *binary tree* is a data structure that is naturally defined in recursive terms and processed by recursive algorithms. It consists of a finite set of nodes that is either empty or else consists of a node (the root) with two disjoint binary trees, called the left and right subtrees [Reference 6]. Recursive procedures for generating and traversing binary trees naturally reflect this mode of definition.

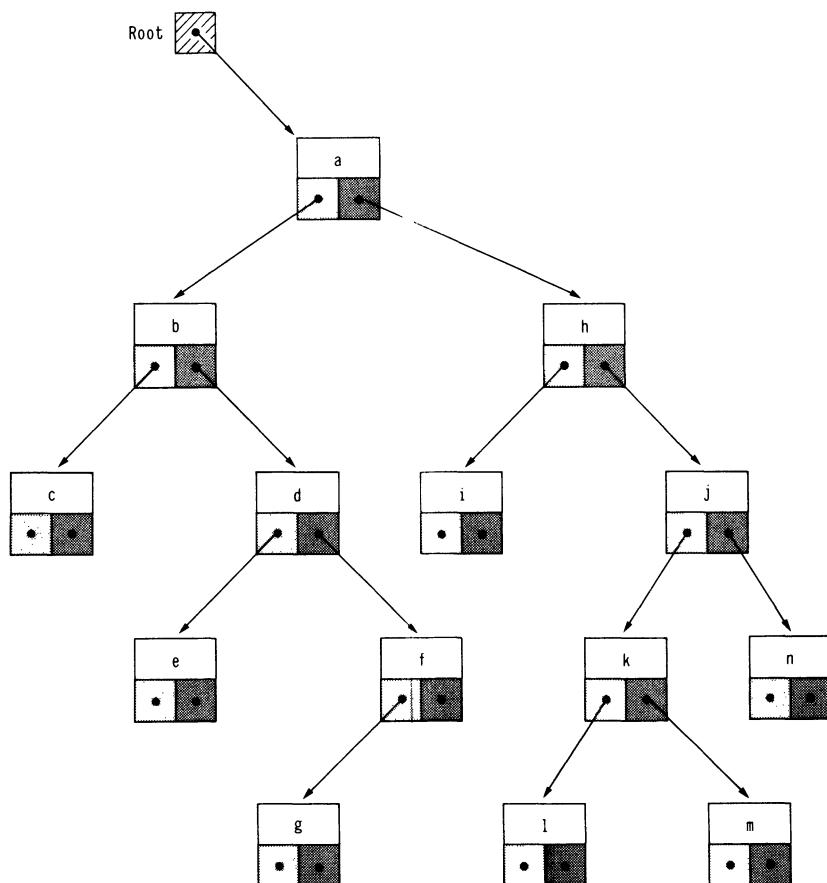
Program 11.6 builds a binary tree and traverses it in pre-, in-, and postorder. The tree is specified in preorder, i.e., by listing the nodes (single letters in this case) starting at the root and following first the left and then the right subtrees so that the input corresponding to Figure 11.i is:

```
abc..de..fg...hi..jkl..m..n..
```

where a point signifies an empty subtree.

11.A.4. Procedural parameters

We can rewrite Program 11.6 to illustrate passing procedures as parameters. Procedural parameters appear in the formal parameter list of procedures and functions as procedure headings. In the corresponding actual parameter list only the procedure identifier must be specified. Program 11.7 illustrates this as well as the passing of actual string values to conformant–array parameters.

**Figure 11.i** Binary Tree Structure

```

program Traversal(Input,Out :st);
{ Program 11.6 - Illustrates binary tree traversal. }
type
  Ptr = ^Node;
  Node =
    record
      Info: Char;
      LLink, RLink: Ptr
    end;
var
  Root: Ptr;
  Ch: Char;
  
```

```

procedure PreOrder(P: Ptr);
begin
  if P <> nil then begin
    Write(Output, P^.Info); PreOrder(P^.LLink);
    PreOrder(P^.RLink)
  end
end { PreOrder };

procedure InOrder(P: Ptr);
begin
  if P <> nil then begin
    InOrder(P^.LLink); Write(Output, P^.Info);
    InOrder(P^.RLink)
  end
end { InOrder };

procedure PostOrder(P: Ptr);
begin
  if P <> nil then begin
    PostOrder(P^.LLink); PostOrder(P^.RLink);
    Write(Output, P^.Info)
  end
end { PostOrder };

procedure Enter(var P: Ptr);
begin Read(Input, Ch); Write(Output, Ch);
  if Ch <> '.' then begin
    New(P);
    P^.Info := Ch; Enter(P^.LLink); Enter(P^.RLink)
  end else P := nil
end { Enter };

begin { Traversal }
  Enter(Root); Writeln(Output);
  PreOrder(Root); Writeln(Output);
  InOrder(Root); Writeln(Output);
  PostOrder(Root); Writeln(Output)
end { Traversal } .

```

Produces as results:

```

abc..de..fg...hi..jkl..m..n..
abcdefghijklmn
cbedgfaihlkmjn
cegfdbilmknjha

```

```
program Traversal2(Input,Output);  
  
{ Program 11.7 - Rewrite program 11.6 using procedural  
al  
      parameter .. }  
  
type  
  Ptr = ^Node;  
  Node =  
    record  
      Info: Char;  
      LLink, RLink: Ptr  
    end;  
  Positive = 1..MaxInt;  
  
var  
  Root: Ptr;  
  Ch: Char;  
  
procedure PreOrder(P: Ptr);  
begin  
  if P <> nil then  
  begin  
    Write(Output,P^.Info); PreOrder(P^.LLink);  
    PreOrder(P^.RLink)  
  end  
end { PreOrder };  
  
procedure InOrder(P: Ptr);  
begin  
  if P <> nil then  
  begin  
    InOrder(P^.LLink); Write(Output, P^.Info);  
    InOrder(P^.RLink)  
  end  
end { InOrder };  
  
procedure PostOrder(P: Ptr);  
begin  
  if P <> nil then  
  begin  
    PostOrder(P^.LLink); PostOrder(P^.RLink);  
    Write(Output,P^.Info)  
  end  
end { PostOrder };
```

```

procedure Enter(var P: Ptr);
begin  Read(Input, Ch); Write(Output, Ch);
if Ch <> '.' then
begin  New(P);
P^.Info := Ch; Enter(P^.LLink); Enter(P^.RLink)

end
else  P := nil
end { Enter };

procedure WriteNodes
(procedure TreeOperation(Start: Ptr); Root: Ptr;
Title: packed array [M..N: Positive] of Char);
var
C: Positive;
begin
Writeln(Output);
for C := M to N do Write(Output, Title[C]);
Writeln(Output); Writeln(Output);
TreeOperation(Root); Writeln(Output)
end { WriteNodes };

begin { Traversal2 }
Enter(Root); Writeln(Output);
WriteNodes(PreOrder, Root,
'Nodes listed in preorder:');
WriteNodes(InOrder, Root, 'Nodes listed inorder:');
WriteNodes(PostOrder, Root,
'Nodes listed in postorder:')
end { Traversal2 } .

```

Produces as results:

abc..de..fg...hi..jkl..m..n..

Nodes listed in preorder:

abcdefghijklmn

Nodes listed inorder:

cbedgfaihlmjn

Nodes listed in postorder:

cegfdbilmknjha

Be careful of applying recursive techniques indiscriminately. Although appearing “clever,” they do not always produce the most computationally efficient solutions.

If a procedure P activates a procedure Q and Q also activates P , and neither is declared within the other, then either P or Q must be declared in a *forward declaration* (Section 11.C).

The *predeclared procedures* in Appendix A are provided in every implementation of Standard Pascal. Any implementation may feature additional predeclared procedures. Since they are, as all predeclared and predefined objects, assumed to have a scope surrounding the user program, no conflict arises from a declaration redefining the same identifier within the program.

Predeclared procedures may not be passed as actual procedural parameters.

11.B. Functions

Functions are program parts (in the same sense as procedures) which compute a single ordinal, real, or pointer value for use in the evaluation of an expression. A *function designator* specifies the activation of a function and consists of the identifier denoting the function and a list of actual parameters. The parameters are variables, expressions, procedures, or functions and are substituted for the corresponding formal parameters.

The function declaration has the same form as the program, with the exception of the *function heading* which has the form:

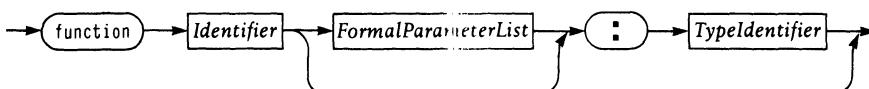


Figure 11.j Syntax diagram for *FunctionHeading*

As in the case of procedures, the labels in the label declaration part and all identifiers introduced in the constant definition part, the type definition part, the variable, procedure, or function declaration parts are *local* to the function declaration, which is called the *scope* of these objects. They are not known outside their scope. The values of local

variables are undefined at the beginning of the statement part.

The identifier specified in the function heading names the function. The result type is named by the type identifier and must be a simple or pointer type. Within the function declaration there must be an executed assignment (of the result type) to the function identifier to “return n” the result of the function.

Program 11.8 reformulates the exponentiation algorithm of Program 4.3 as a function declaration.

The appearance of the function identifier in an expression within the function itself implies *recursive* execution of the function. Appendix F illustrates a recursive function.

Function designators may occur before the function declaration if there is a *forward declaration* (Section 11.C).

The *predeclared functions* of Appendix A are assumed to be provided in every implementation of Standard Pascal. Any implementation may feature additional predeclared functions. Predeclared functions may not be passed as actual functional parameters.

```
program Exponentiation2(Output);

{ Program 11.8 - Reformulate Program 4.6 using a
  function. }

type
  Natural = 0..MaxInt;
var
  Pi, PiSquared: Real;

function Power(Base: Real; Exponent: Natural): Real;
  var
    Result: Real;
begin  Result := 1;
  while Exponent > 0 do begin
    while not Odd(Exponent) do begin
      Exponent := Exponent div 2; Base := Sqr(Base)
    end;
    Exponent := Exponent - 1; Result := Result * Base
  end;
  Power := Result
end { Power };
```

```

begin Pi := ArcTan(1.0) * ;
  Writeln(Output, 2.0 :11:6, 7 :3, Power(2.0,7) :11:6);
  PiSquared := Power(Pi,2);
  Writeln(Output, Pi :11:6, 2 :3, PiSquared :11:6);
  Writeln(Output, PiSquared :11:6, 2 :3,
          Power(PiSquared, 2) :11:6);
  Writeln(Output, Pi :11:6, 4 :3, Power(Pi,4) :11:6)
end { Exponentiation2 } .

```

Produces as results:

```

2.000000 7 128.000000
3.141593 2 9.869605
9.869605 2 97.409100
3.141593 4 97.409100

```

11.B.1. Functional parameters

Functions themselves may also be passed as parameters to procedures and functions. A formal functional parameter is specified by a function heading; its corresponding actual parameter is a function identifier. Program 11.9 computes the sum of terms in a series for different functions specified at activation.

```

program SumSeries(Output);

{ Program 11.9 - Write a table of a series sum
  progression. }

const
  MaxTerms = 10;
var
  Term: 1..MaxTerms;

function Sigma( function F(X:Real):Real;
                Lower, Upper :Integer ): Real;
var
  Index: Integer;
  Sum: Real;
begin
  Sum := 0.0;
  for Index := Lower to Upper do
    Sum := Sum + F(Index);
  Sigma := Sum
end { Sigma };

```

```

function IncreasingSine(X: Real): Real;
begin
  IncreasingSine := sin(X) * X
end { IncreasingSine };

function InverseCube(X: Real): Real;
begin
  InverseCube := 1 / (Sqr(X) * X)
end { InverseCube };

begin { SumSeries }
  for Term := 1 to MaxTerms do
    Writeln(Term, Sigma(IncreasingSine, 1, Term),
            Sigma(InverseCube, 1, Term))
end { SumSeries } .

```

Produces as results:

```

1 8.414710E-01 1.000000E+00
2 2.660066E+00 1.125000E+00
3 3.083426E+00 1.162037E+00
4 5.621672E-02 1.177662E+00
5-4.738405E+00 1.185662E+00
6-6.414900E+00 1.190292E+00
7-1.815995E+00 1.193207E+00
8 6.098872E+00 1.195160E+00
9 9.807942E+00 1.196532E+00
10 4.367733E+00 1.197532E+00

```

11.B.2 Side Effects

An assignment (occurring in a function declaration) to a non-local variable or to a variable parameter is called a *side effect*. Such occurrences often disguise the intent of the program and greatly complicate the task of verification. Hence, the use of functions producing side effects is strongly discouraged. As an example, consider Program 11.10.

```

program SideEffect(Output);
{ Program 11.10 - Illustrate function side effects. }
var
  A, Z: Integer;

```

```

function Sneaky(X: Integer): Integer;
begin
  Z := Z - X { side effect on Z };
  Sneaky := Sqr(X)
end { Sneaky };

begin
  Z := 10; A := Sneaky(Z);
  Writeln(Output, A, Z);
  Z := 10; A := Sneaky(10); A := A * Sneaky(Z);
  Writeln(Output, A, Z);
  Z := 10; A := Sneaky(Z); A := A * Sneaky(10);
  Writeln(Output, A, Z);
end { SideEffect } .

```

Produces as results:

100	0
0	0
10000	-10

11.C. Forward Declarations

Procedure (function) identifiers may be used before the procedure (function) declaration if there is a *forward declaration*. Forward declarations are necessary to allow mutually recursive procedures and functions that are not nested. The form is as follows: (Notice that the parameter list and result type are written *only* in the forward declaration.)

```

procedure Q(X: T); Forward;
procedure P(Y: T);
begin
  Q(A)
end;

procedure Q;
  { parameters and result types are not repeated }
begin
  P(B)
end;

```

CHAPTER 12

Textfile Input and Output

Communication between people and computer systems was already mentioned in Chapter 9, File Types. Both learn to *understand* through what is termed *pattern recognition*. Unfortunately, the patterns recognized most easily by people (mainly those of picture and sound) are very different from those acceptable to computer systems (electrical impulses). In fact, the expense of physically transmitting data — implying a translation of patterns legible to people into those legible to computer systems and vice versa — can be as costly as the processing of the data itself. (Consequently, much research is devoted to minimizing the cost by “automating” more of the translation process.) This task of communication is called input and output handling (I/O).

People can transmit information to computer systems via *input devices* and *media* (e.g., keyboards, diskettes, pointing devices, tape cartridges, optical discs, magnetic tapes, terminals) and receive results via *output devices* and *media* (e.g., printers, magnetic tapes, diskettes, tape cartridges, optical discs, plotters, speakers, and video displays). What is common to most of these — and defined by each individual computer installation — is a set of legible characters (Chapter 2). It is over this character set that Pascal defines the standard type `Text` (see Chapter 9).

It is important to remember that each such input–output device enforces certain conventions as to the meaning of specific characters and patterns (strings) of characters. For example, most printers enforce some maximum line length. Also, many older line printers interpret the

first character of each line as a “carriage control” character, which is not printed but may cause some action such as a page eject or overprinting. When a textfile is used to represent a particular device, the program must obey the conventions for using that device.

Textfiles may be accessed through the predeclared file procedures `Get` and `Put`. This can, of course, be quite cumbersome as these procedures are defined for single-character manipulation. To illustrate, suppose we have a natural number stored in a variable `x` and wish to write it on the file output. Note that the pattern of characters denoting the decimal representation of the value will be quite different from that denoting the value written as a Roman numeral (see Program 4.9). But as we are usually interested in decimal notation, it appears sensible to offer built-in, standard, transformation procedures that translate abstract numbers (from whatever computer-internal representation is used) into sequences of decimal digits and vice versa.

The two predeclared procedures `Read` and `Write` are thereby extended in several ways to facilitate the analysis and the formation of textfiles.

12.A. The Standard Files Input and Output

The standard textfiles `Input` and `Output` usually represent the standard I/O media of a computer system (such as the keyboard and the video display). Hence, they are the principal communication line between the computer system and its human user.

Because these two files are used very frequently, they are considered as “default values” in textfile operations when the textfile `F` is not explicitly indicated. That is

<code>Write(Ch)</code>	=	<code>Write(Output, Ch)</code>
<code>Read(Ch)</code>	=	<code>Read(Input, Ch)</code>
<code>Writeln</code>	=	<code>WriteLn(Output)</code> (See Section 12.B.)
<code>Readln</code>	=	<code>ReadLn(Input)</code> (See Section 12.B.)
<code>Eof</code>	=	<code>Eof(Input)</code> (See Section 12.B.)
<code>Eoln</code>	=	<code>Eoln(Input)</code> (See Section 12.B.)
<code>Page</code>	=	<code>Page(Output)</code> (See Section 12.D.)

If any of these procedures and functions are used without indication of a file parameter, the default convention specifies that the standard file `Input` or `Output` is assumed; in which case, it *must* be placed in the parameter list of the program heading.

Note: The effect of applying the predeclared procedure `Reset` or `Rewrite` to either `Input` or `Output` is implementation-defined.

Accordingly, reading and writing a textfile can be expressed as follows (assume `var Ch: Char; B1, B2: Boolean;` and `P, Q, and R` user-defined procedures).

Writing characters on file Output:

```
repeat
  repeat P(Ch); Write(Ch)
  until B1;
  Writeln
until B2
```

Reading characters from file Input:

```
while not eof do
  begin {process a line} P;
    while not eoln do
      begin Read(Ch); Q(Ch)
      end;
    R; Readln
  end
```

The next two examples of programs show the use of the textfiles `Input` and `Output`. (Consider what changes would be necessary if only `Get` and `Put`, not `Read` and `Write`, were to be used.)

```
program LetterFrequencies(Input,Output);

{ Program 12.1 - Perform a frequency count of letters
  in the Input file; echo the input. }

type
  Natural = 0..MaxInt;
var
  Ch: Char;
  Count: array [Char] of Natural;
  Letters, Upper, Lower: set of Char;
```

```

begin
  Upper := ['A','B','C','D','E','F','G','H','I',
            'J','K','L','M','N','O','P','Q','R',
            'S','T','U','V','W','X','Y','Z'];
  Lower := ['a','b','c','d','e','f','g','h','i',
            'j','k','l','m','n','o','p','q','r',
            's','t','u','v','w','x','y','z'];
  Letters := Lower + Upper;
  for Ch := 'A' to 'Z' do Count[Ch] := 0;
  for Ch := 'a' to 'z' do Count[Ch] := 0;
  while not Eof do begin
    while not Eoln do begin
      Read(Ch);  Write(Ch);
      if Ch in Letters then Count[Ch] := Count[Ch] + 1
    end;
    Readln;  Writeln
  end;
  for Ch := 'A' to 'Z' do
    if Ch in Upper then Writeln(Ch, Count[Ch]);
  for Ch := 'a' to 'z' do
    if Ch in Lower then Writeln(Ch, Count[Ch]);
end .

```

Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

A rat in Tom's house might eat Tom's ice cream!
 (Arithmetic)

Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs.

The quick brown fox jumped over the lazy sleeping dog.

A	2
B	0
C	0
D	0
E	0
F	0
G	0
H	0
I	0
J	0
K	0
L	0
M	0
N	0
O	0

P	1
Q	0
R	0
S	0
T	3
U	0
V	0
W	0
X	0
Y	0
Z	0
a	5
b	2
c	5
d	3
e	13
f	2
g	4
h	6
i	10
j	2
k	2
l	3
m	7
n	4
o	10
p	2
q	2
r	6
s	5
t	7
u	5
v	2
w	2
x	2
y	2
z	2

The following program copies Input to Output, inserting line numbers at the beginning of each line.

```
program Addln(Input,Output):
{ Program 12.2 - Add line numbers to text file. }
type
  Natural = 0..MaxInt;
var
  LineNum: Natural;
begin
  LineNum := 0;
  while not Eof do begin
    LineNum := LineNum + 1;
    Write(LineNum:2, ' ');
    while not Eoln do begin
      Write(Input↑); Get(I put)
    end;
    Readln; Writeln
  end
end .
```

Produces as results (assuming appropriate input):

```
1 A rat in Tom's house might eat Tom's ice cream!
2 (Arithmetic)
3 Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs.
4 The quick brown fox jumped over a lazy sleeping dog.
```

When the file variable `Input` represents an input device (such as a keyboard) attached to an interactive terminal, most Pascal implementations delay evaluation of the buffer variable `Input↑` until its value is actually required in the program. The use of `Input↑` in expressions or implicitly as part of the action of `Read`, `Readln`, `eof`, or `eoln` causes its evaluation. Although an implicit `Reset(Input)` is done at the beginning of the program, the program will not wait for data from the terminal until it is needed — for example, when `Input↑` is used. If the program writes a message to prompt its user for a response to be read in, the request for input will occur after the prompt has been written (just as you would expect ordinarily).

The program fragment below illustrates prompting a user interactively:

```

program PromptExample(Input,Output);
var Guess: Integer;
.
.
.
begin { Implicit Reset(Input) occurs here. }
  Writeln('Please enter an integer from 1 and 10.');
  Read(Guess)
.
.
.
```

A Pascal implementation *not* employing the delayed evaluation of `Input`[↑] will cause a request or wait for data before the message is written because of the implicit `Reset(Input)` which occurs as the program begins executing. Whether or not delayed evaluation is supported is implementation-defined.

12.B. The Procedures Read and Readln

The procedure `Read` was defined for textfiles in Section 9.B. `Read` is extended not only to accept a variable number of parameters, but also to accept parameters of type `Integer` (or a subrange of `Integer`) and `Real`.

Let v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n denote variables of type `Char`, `Integer`, (or subrange of either) or `Real`, and let F denote a textfile. `Read(F, V)` is an error if F is undefined or F is not in inspection mode or `eof(F)` is true.

1. `Read(V1, ..., Vn)` stands for
`Read(Input, V1, ..., Vn)`
2. `Read(F, V1, ..., Vn)` stands for
`begin Read(F, V1); ...; Read(F, Vn) end`
3. `Readln(V1, ..., Vn)` stands for
`Readln(Input, V1, ..., Vn)`
4. `Readln(F, V1, ..., Vn)` stands for
`begin Read(F, V1); ...; Read(F, Vn); Readln(F)`
`end`

The effect for `Readln` is that after v_n is read (from F), the remainder of the current line is skipped. (However, the values of $v_1 \dots v_n$ may stretch over several lines.)

5. If Ch is a variable of type Char or subrange of Char, then Read(F, Ch) assigns the character at the current position of file F or the value of F↑ to Ch, followed by a Get(F), the choice being implementation-dependent.
6. If a parameter v is of type Integer or a subrange of Integer then Read accepts a sequence of characters forming a signed integer with possible leading blanks. The integer value denoted by this sequence is then assigned to v.
7. If a parameter v is of type Real, Read accepts a sequence of characters forming a signed number with possible leading blanks. The real value denoted by this sequence is then assigned to v.

In scanning F (skipping blank) to read numbers, Read may also skip end-of-line markers. F is left positioned to the non-digit character following the last digit constituting a number. To correctly read consecutive numbers, separate them by blanks or put them on separate lines. Read accepts the longest sequence of digits, and if two numbers are not separated, Read cannot distinguish them as two numbers (and neither can people!)

Examples:

Read and process a sequence of numbers where the last value is immediately followed by an asterisk. Assume F to be a textfile, x and Ch to be variables of types Integer (or Real) and Char respectively.

```
Reset(F);
repeat
  Read(F, X, Ch);
  P(X)
until Ch = '*'
```

Perhaps a more common situation is when there is no way of knowing how many data items are to be read, and there is no special symbol that terminates the list. Two convenient schemata are shown below. They make use of procedure SkipBlanks:

```
procedure SkipBlanks(vcl F: Text);
  var Done: Boolean;
begin
  Done := False;
```

```

repeat
    if eof(F) then Done := True
    else
        if F↑ = ' ' then Get(F)
        else Done := True
    until Done
end

```

The first schema processes single numbers:

```

Reset(F);
while not eof(F) do
begin
    Read(F,X); SkipBlanks(F);
    P(X);
end

```

The second schema processes n-tuples of numbers:

```

Reset(F);
while not eof(F) do
begin
    Read(F,X1,...,Xn); SkipBlanks(F)
    P(X1,...,Xn);
end

```

For the above schema to function properly, the total number of single numbers must be a multiple of n .

12.C. The Procedures Write and Writeln

The procedure `Write` was defined for textfiles in Section 9.B. `Write` is extended to accept a variable number of parameters whose types are compatible with `Integer`, `Real`, `Boolean`, or string types.

The procedure `Write` appends character strings (one or more characters) to a textfile. Let P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n be parameters of the form defined in the syntax diagram for `WriteParameterList` (Figure 12.a), and let F be a textfile. Then `Write(F, P)` is an error if F is undefined or F is not in generation mode or if `eof(F)` is not true.

1. `Write(P1, ..., Pn)` stands for

`Write(Output, P1, ..., Pn)`

2. `Write(F,P1,...,Pn)` stands for
`begin Write(F,P1 ;...,Write(F,Pn) end`
3. `Writeln(P1,...,Pn)` stands for
`Writeln(Output,F ,...,Pn)`
4. `Writeln(F,P1,...,Pn)` stands for
`begin Write(F,P1 ;...;Write(F,Pn);`
`Writeln(F) end`

`Writeln` has the effect of writing `P1,...,Pn` and then terminating the current line of the textfile `F`.

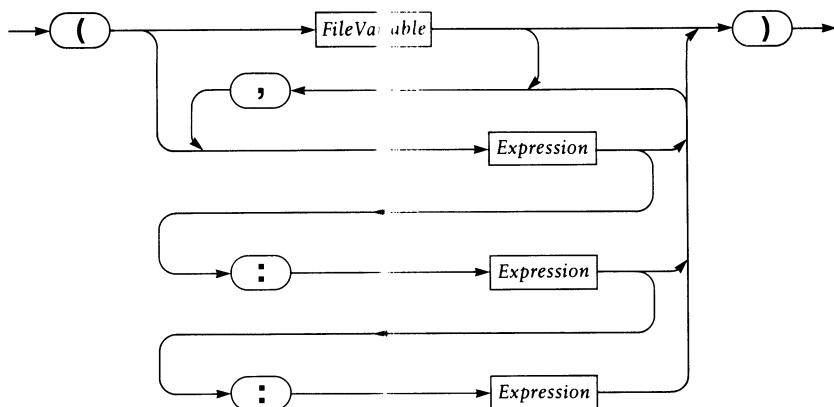


Figure 12.a Syntax diagram for `WriteParameterList`

5. Every parameter `Pi` must be of one of the forms:

```

e
e: w
e: w: f
  
```

where `e`, `w`, and `f` are expressions. `e` is the value to be written whose type is `Char`, `Integer`, any string, `Boolean`, or `Real`. `w` — called the minimum field width — is an optional control. `w` must be a positive integer expression and indicates the number of characters to be written. In general, `e` is written with `w` characters (with preceding blanks if necessary). If no field width is specified, a default value is assumed according to the type of `e`. `f` — called the fraction length — is an optional control and is applicable only when `e` is of type `Real`. It must be a positive integer expression.

6. If e has type `Char`, the default value of w is 1. Therefore `Write(F,C)` stands for `begin f↑ := C; Put(F) end.`
7. If e has type `Integer`, the default value of w is implementation defined. If w is less than the number of characters needed to write the integer, the entire representation of the integer (including a '-' if e is negative) is written anyway!
8. If e has a string type, the default value of w is the length of the string. If w is less than this length, then only the first w characters of e are written.
9. If e has type `Boolean`, the default value of w is implementation defined. One of the strings '`true`' or '`false`' is written according to 8. above depending on the value of w . Whether upper-case or lower-case (or even mixed-case) letters are written to represent the values `true` or `false` is implementation defined.
10. If e has type `Real`, the default value of w is implementation-defined. If w is less than the number of characters needed to write the real number, more space is taken (including room for a '-' if e is negative). If f (the fraction length) is specified, the value of e will be written in *fixed-point* notation. Otherwise the value is written in decimal *floating-point* form using exponent notation.

The general form for fixed-point notation is the sequence of characters: an optional minus sign (if the number is negative), a digit sequence representing the integer part, a period (decimal point), and a digit sequence representing the fraction part. The length of the fraction part is specified by f .

The general form for floating-point form is the sequence of w characters: a blank or minus sign, one digit, a period (decimal point), a digit sequence, the letter `E` (or `e`), a plus sign or minus sign, and a digit sequence having an implementation-defined length representing the exponent. The length of the first digit sequence (preceding the letter `E`) will vary depending on the value of w . No additional preceding blanks are written for decimal floating-point form.

Figure 12.b gives examples of formatted writes with each type.

Char :	w	<u>Write('\$:w)</u>
	1	\$
	3	\$

Integer	w	<u>Write(-1984:w)</u>	<u>Write(1984:w)</u>
	1	- 1 9 8 4	1 9 8 4
	4	- 1 9 8 4	1 9 8 4
	5	- 1 9 8 4	1 9 8 4
	7	- 1 9 8 4	1 9 8 4

strings	w	<u>Write('h e l l o ':w)</u>
	1	h
	3	h e l
	5	h e l l
	7	h e l l o

Boolean	w	<u>Write(false:w)</u>	<u>Write(true:w)</u>
	1	f	t
	3	f a l	t r u
	5	f a l s e	t r u e
	7	f a l s e	t r u e

Figure 12.b Formatted Write Examples

Real	w	f	<u>Write(123.789:w:f)</u>	<u>Write(-123.789:w:f)</u>
1	1		1 2 3 . 8	- 1 2 3 . 8
1	3		1 2 3 . 7 8 9	- 1 2 3 . 7 8 9
1	4		1 2 3 . 7 8 9 0	- 1 2 3 . 7 8 9 0
5	1		1 2 3 . 8	- 1 2 3 . 8
6	1		1 2 3 . 8	- 1 2 3 . 8
7	1		1 2 3 . 8	- 1 2 3 . 8

w	<u>Write(987.6:w)</u>	<u>Write(-987.6:w)</u>
1	9 . 9 E + 0 2	- 9 . 9 E + 0 2
8	9 . 9 E + 0 2	- 9 . 9 E + 0 2
9	9 . 8 8 E + 0 2	- 9 . 8 8 E + 0 2
10	9 . 8 7 6 E + 0 2	- 9 . 8 7 6 E + 0 2
11	9 . 8 7 6 0 E + 0 2	- 9 . 8 7 6 0 E + 0 2

Figure 12.b Continued

Note: In the `Write(123.789:1:4)` and `Write(987.6:11)` examples, zeroes may or may not be written because of the differing representation of fractions of real numbers on different computer systems.

`Write(123.789:1:4)` might appear as 123.7889 and
`Write(987.6:11)` might appear as 9.8759E+02 .

12.D. The Procedure Page

As a convenience for formatting textfiles, Pascal has a predefined `Page` procedure. `Page(F)` is intended to cause subsequent text written on `F` to appear on a new “page” (if `F` is printed or displayed, etc.).

`Page(F)` causes an implementation-defined action on the file `F`. In most implementations, `Page(F)` writes the appropriate control characters (such as an ASCII Form Feed) to cause the desired effect.

Notes: If `Page(F)` is invoked and the last operation on `F` was not `Writeln(F)` then `Page(F)` performs an implicit `Writeln(F)` as its first action. `F` must be defined and in generation mode or else `Page(F)` is an error. The effect of reading a file `F` to which `Page(F)` has been applied is implementation-dependent.

REPORT

1. Introduction

The development of the language *Pascal* is based on two principal aims. The first is to make available a language suitable to teach programming as a systematic discipline based on certain fundamental concepts clearly and naturally reflected by the language. The second is to develop implementations of this language that are both reliable and efficient on presently available computers.

The desire for a new language for the purpose of teaching programming is due to my dissatisfaction with the presently used major languages whose features and constructs too often cannot be explained logically and convincingly and that too often defy systematic reasoning. Along with this dissatisfaction goes my conviction that the language in which students are taught to express their ideas profoundly influences their habits of thought and invention, and that the disorder governing these languages directly imposes itself onto the programming style of the students.

There is of course plenty of reason to be cautious with the introduction of yet another programming language, and the objection against teaching programming in a language which is not widely used and accepted has undoubtedly some justification, at least based on short-term commercial reasoning. However, the choice of a language for teaching based on its widespread acceptance and availability, together with the fact that the language most widely taught is therefore going to be the one most widely used, forms the safest recipe for stagnation in a subject of such profound pedagogical influence. I consider it therefore well worth while to make an effort to break this vicious circle.

Of course a new language should not be developed just for the sake of novelty; existing languages should be used as a basis for development wherever they meet the criteria mentioned and do not impede a systematic structure. In that sense Algol 60 was used as a basis for Pascal, since it meets the demands with respect to teaching to a much higher degree than any other standard language. Thus the principles of structuring, and in fact the form of expressions, are copied from Algol 60. It was, however, not deemed appropriate to adopt Algol 60 as a subset of Pascal; certain construction principles, particularly

those of declarations, would have been incompatible with those allowing a natural and convenient representation of the additional features of Pascal.

The main extensions relative to Algol 60 lie in the domain of data-structuring facilities, since their lack in Algol 60 was considered as the prime cause for its relatively narrow range of applicability. The introduction of record and file structures should make it possible to solve commercial-type problems with Pascal, or at least to employ it successfully to demonstrate such problems in a programming course.

2. Summary of the Language

A computer program consists of two essential parts, a description of *actions* which are to be performed, and a description of the *data* that are manipulated by these actions. Actions are described by so-called *statements*, and data are described by so-called *declarations* and *definitions*.

The data are represented by values of *variables*. Every variable occurring in a statement must be introduced by a *variable declaration*, which associates an identifier and a data type with that variable. The *type* essentially defines the set of values that may be assumed by that variable, and restricts the set of valid operations on those values. A type in Pascal may be either directly described in the variable declaration, or it may be associated with a type identifier by a *type definition* and then represented by name.

The *simple* types are the predefined type *Real* and the various *ordinal* types. Every simple type defines an ordered set of values. Each ordinal type is characterized by a one-to-one mapping from its values to an interval of the integers — the so-called ordinal numbers of those values.

The basic ordinal types are the programmer-defined *enumerated* types and the predefined types *Boolean*, *Char*, and *Integer*. An enumerated type introduces a new set of values and a distinct identifier to denote each value. The values of *Char* are denoted by quotations, and the values of *Integer* and *Real* are denoted by numbers; these are syntactically distinct from identifiers. The set of values of type *Char*

and their graphic representation vary from implementation to implementation, depending on the character set of a particular computer system.

Another ordinal type that may be defined is a *subrange* of any basic ordinal type (the host type) by indicating the smallest and largest values in the interval of values represented by the subrange.

The *structured* types are defined by describing the types of their components and by indicating a structuring method. The various structuring methods differ in the mechanism serving to access the components of a variable of the structured type. In Pascal, there are four basic structuring methods available: array structure, record structure, set structure, and file structure.

In an *array* structure, all components are of the same type. A component is accessed by a computable *index*, whose type is indicated in the array type description and which must be ordinal. It is usually an enumerated type or a subrange of Integer. Given a value of the index type, an *indexed variable* accesses one component of the array. Each array variable can therefore be regarded as a mapping of the index type onto the component type. The time needed for a component access does not depend on the value of the index. The array structure is therefore called a *random-access* structure.

In a *record* structure, the components (called *fields*) are not necessarily of the same type. In order that the type of a field be evident from the program text (without executing the program), a field is not specified by a computable value, but instead is specified by a unique identifier. These field identifiers are declared in the record type description. Again, the time needed to access any component does not depend on the field identifier, and the record is therefore also a random-access structure.

A record type may be specified as having several *variants*. This implies that different variables, although said to be of the same type, may assume structures that differ in a certain manner. The difference may consist of a different number and different types of components. The variant that is assumed by the current value of a record variable may be indicated by a component field which is common to all variants and is called the *tag field*. Usually, the part common to all variants will consist of several components, including the tag field.

A *set* structure defines the set of values that is the powerset of its base type, i.e., the set of all subsets of values of the base type. The base type must be an ordinal type, and will usually be an enumerated type, Char, or a subrange of Integer. Components (members) of sets are not directly accessed, but the set operations (including the membership operator) and a set–value *constructor* allow creation and manipulation of entire sets.

A *file* structure describes a *sequence* of components of the same type. A natural ordering of the components is defined through the sequence. At any instant, only one component is directly accessible, and it may be either inspected or generated but not both. The other components are accessed by progressing sequentially through the file. A file is generated by sequentially appending components at its end. Consequently, the file type description does not determine the number of components.

A variable declaration associates an identifier with a type, and when the block (see below) in which the declaration occurs is activated, a variable that is named by the identifier is created. Such variables that are declared in explicit declarations are sometimes called *static*. In contrast, variables may be generated by executable statement; such a *dynamic* generation yields a so–called *pointer* (a substitute for an explicit identifier) which subsequently serves to identify the variable. This pointer value may be assigned to variables and functions that possess its type. Each pointer type has a fixed *domain* type, and every variable identified by a pointer value of the pointer type possesses the domain type. In addition to such *identifying* values, each pointer type also has the value *nil* which points to no variable. Because components of structured variables may possess pointer types, and the domain type of pointer types may be structured, the use of pointers permits the representation of finite graphs in full generality.

The most fundamental statement is the *assignment* statement. It specifies that a value obtained by evaluating an *expression* be assigned to a variable (or component thereof). Expressions consist of variables, constants, array–parameter index bounds, set constructors, and operators and functions operating on the denoted quantities yielding result values. Variables, constants, and functions are either declared in

the program or are standard (“predeclared”) entities. Pascal defines a fixed set of operators, each of which can be regarded as describing a mapping from the operand types into the result type. The set of operators is divided into four groups.

1. *Arithmetic* operators are addition, subtraction, sign inversion, multiplication, division, and modulus.
2. *Boolean* operators are negation, union (or), and conjunction (and).
3. *Set* operators are union, intersection, and set difference.
4. *Relational* operators are equality, inequality, ordering, set membership, and set inclusion. The result type of relational operators is Boolean.

The *procedure* statement causes the execution of the designated procedure (see below). Assignment and procedure statements are the components, or “building blocks,” of *structured* statements, which specify sequential, selective, or repeated execution of their components. Sequential execution of statements is specified by the *compound* statement, conditional or selective execution by the *if* and *case* statements, and repeated execution by the *repeat*, *while*, and *for* statements. The *if* statement serves to make the execution of a statement dependent on the value of a Boolean expression, and the *case* statement allows the selection among many statements according to the value of an ordinal expression. The *for* statement is used to execute the component statement while each of a succession of ordinal values is assigned to a so-called control variable. The *repeat* and *while* statements are used otherwise.

In addition, Pascal provides a *goto* statement, which indicates that execution is to continue at another place in the program; that place is marked by a *label*, which must be declared.

Statements along with declarations of labels, constants, types, variables, procedures, and functions are collected together into *blocks*. The labels, constants, variables, types, procedures and functions declared in a block may be referred to only within that block, and therefore are called *local* to the block. Their identifiers have significance only within the program text that constitutes the block and that is called the *scope* of these identifiers. Blocks are the basis for

declaring *programs*, *procedures*, and *functions*, in which a block is given a name (identifier) by which the block may be denoted. Since procedures and functions may be nested, scopes may be nested.

A procedure or function has a fixed number of parameters, each of which is denoted within the procedure or function by an identifier called the *formal* parameter. When a procedure or function is activated, an actual quantity has to be indicated for each parameter; the quantity can be referenced from inside the block of the procedure or function through the formal parameter. This quantity is called the *actual* parameter. There are four kinds of parameters: value parameters, variable parameters, procedural parameters, and functional parameters. In the first case, the actual parameter is an expression which is evaluated, and the value assigned to the formal parameter, once at the beginning of each activation of the procedure or function. The formal parameter represents a local variable. In the case of a variable parameter, the actual parameter denotes a variable and the formal parameter denotes the same variable during the entire activation of the procedure or function. In the case of procedural or functional parameters, the actual parameter is a procedure or function identifier.

A function is declared analogously to a procedure, except that the function yields a result which must possess the type that is specified in the function declaration. The result type is confined to be a simple type or a pointer type. Functions may be used as constituents in expressions. Assignments to non-local variables and other so-called side effects should be avoided within function declarations.

3. Notation and Terminology

Syntactic constructs are denoted by descriptive English words (meta-identifiers) written in italics and are defined by rules of Extended Backus–Naur Form (EBNF) [Reference 13]. Each rule defines a meta-identifier by means of an EBNF expression, which consists of one or more alternative phrases separated by vertical bars (|). A phrase consists of zero or more elements, each of which is a meta-identifier, a literal symbol enclosed in quotes (" "), or an expression enclosed in matching braces, brackets, or parentheses.

Braces { and } indicate repetition (zero or more occurrences), brackets [and] indicate optionality (zero or one occurrences), and parentheses (and) indicate grouping (exactly one occurrence) of the enclosed expression.

Within Section 4, EBNF rules describe the formation of *lexical symbols* from characters; additional characters must not occur within a symbol. Sections 5 through 13 use EBNF rules to define the syntax of programs in terms of symbols; symbols may be separated by (or preceded by) *symbol separators* as described in Section 4.

The term *error* describes a program action or state that violates the standard. Any processor may fail to detect errors.

Implementation-defined means that a particular Pascal construct may differ between various implementations. Each implementation must specify how it implements that construct.

Implementation-dependent means that a particular construct varies between implementations and that an implementation does *not* have to specify how it implements that construct.

An *extension* is an additional construct not available in all implementations that does not in itself affect or invalidate the constructs of Standard Pascal. Implementations often support extensions in the form of additional predefined and predeclared constants, types, variables, procedures and functions.

A program that conforms to the standard must not depend on any implementation-dependent constructs or on any extensions. A portable program must, in addition, be very careful in its use of implementation-defined constructs (e.g., character set, or range of integer values).

4. Symbols and Symbol Separators

A program is represented as a sequence of symbols arranged according to the rules of Pascal syntax. Adjacent symbols often are separated by symbol separators for purposes of readability. Symbols are categorized as the special symbols, identifiers, directives, numbers, labels, and character strings. Symbol separators are spaces, comments, and the ends of lines of the textual program representation.

```

SpecialSymbol = "+" | "-" | "*" | "/" |
    "=" | "<>" | "<" | "<=" | ">" | ">=" | 
    "(" | ")" | "[" | "]" | ":"= | ".." | 
    ":" | ";" | "↑" | WordSymbol .

WordSymbol = "div" | "mod" | "nil" | "in" | "or" | "and" |
    "not" | "if" | "then" | "else" | "case" | "of" |
    "repeat" | "until" | "while" | "do" | "for" |
    "to" | "goto" | "downto" | "begin" | "end" |
    "with" | "const" | "var" | "type" | "array" |
    "record" | "set" | "file" | "function" |
    "procedure" | "label" | "packed" | "program" .

```

The following alternative representations are standard:

Reference	Alternative
↑	^ or @
{	(.
}	.)

Many of the symbols are constructed from letters and digits. Except within a character string, a lower-case letter is equivalent to the corresponding upper-case letter.

```

Letter = "a" | "b" | "c" | "d" | "e" | "f" | "g" | "h" | "i" |
    "j" | "k" | "l" | "m" | "n" | "o" | "p" | "q" | "r" |
    "s" | "t" | "u" | "v" | "w" | "x" | "y" | "z" .

```

```

Digit = "0" | "1" | "2" | "3" | "4" | "5" | "6" | "7" | "8" | "9" .

```

Identifiers serve to denote constants, types, variables, procedures, functions, fields, and bounds. Directives are used in procedure and function declarations.

Identifier = *Letter* { *Letter* | *Digit* } .

Directive = *Letter* { *Letter* | *Digit* } .

The *spelling* of a word symbol, identifier, or directive is the entire sequence of specific letters and digits that it contains. No identifier or directive may have the same spelling as a word symbol.

150 Pascal Report

Examples of identifiers (six distinct spellings):

FirstPlace	ord	ProcedureOrFunctionDeclaration
Elizabeth	John	ProcedureOrFunctionHeading

A specific identifier spelling is introduced by a declaration or definition to have a specific meaning, and that identifier spelling cannot have any other meaning within a region of the program text that is called the *scope* of that declaration or definition (see Section 10).

Numbers are expressed using the usual decimal notation. Unsigned integers and unsigned reals are, respectively, constants of the predefined types Integer and Real (see Section 6.1.2). The letter “e” preceding the scale factor in an unsigned real means “times 10 to the power.” The maximum value that an *UnsignedInteger* may represent is the implementation-defined value of the predefined constant Maxint.

UnsignedNumber = UnsignedInteger | UnsignedReal .

UnsignedInteger = DigitSequence .

*UnsignedReal = DigitSequence " " DigitSequence ["e" ScaleFactor]
| DigitSequence "e" ScaleFactor .*

ScaleFactor = [Sign] DigitSequence .

Sign = "+" | "-" .

DigitSequence = Digit { Digit } .

Examples of unsigned integers:

1 100 00100

Examples of unsigned reals:

0.1 0.1e0 87.55e+8 1E2

The signed numbers are the form that is acceptable for numeric input from textfiles (see Section 12).

SignedNumber = SignedInteger | SignedReal .

SignedInteger = [Sign] UnsignedInteger .

SignedReal = [Sign] UnsignedReal .

Character strings are sequences of string elements enclosed in apostrophes. A string element represents an implementation-defined value of the predefined type Char, and consists either of two adjacent apostrophes or of any other implementation-defined character. Two

distinct characters occurring as string elements must denote different values of type Char. The string element consisting of two apostrophes denotes the apostrophe character.

CharacterString = ‘‘ ‘‘ *StringElement* { *StringElement* } ‘‘ ‘‘ .

StringElement = ‘‘ ‘‘ | *AnyCharacterExceptApostrophe* .

A character string is a constant of type Char if it has one string element; otherwise it is a constant of a string type (see Section 6.2.1) that has as many components as there are string elements.

Note: A character string must be written on just one line of program text.

Examples of character strings:

```
'A'          ';' 
'Pascal'      '''' 
'This is a character string'
```

Symbol separators may be placed between any two adjacent symbols or before the first symbol of a program. At least one symbol separator must occur between two adjacent identifiers, directives, word symbols, labels, or numbers. A separator is a space, the end of a line of program text, or a comment. The meaning of a program is unaltered if a comment is replaced with a space.

Comment = (“{” | “(*)”) [*CommentElement*] (“}” | “*”) .

A *CommentElement* is either an end of line or any sequence of characters not containing “]” or “*”).

Notes: { ... *} and (* ... } are valid comments. The comment {*} is equivalent to the comment {}.

5. Constants

A constant definition introduces a constant identifier to denote the value that is specified by the constant in the definition; the constant identifier being defined must not occur in the constant part of the definition. Constant definitions are collected into constant definition parts.

```

ConstantDefinitionPart = [ "const" ConstantDefinition ";"  

                           { ConstantDefinition ";" } ].  

ConstantDefinition = Identifier "=" Constant .  

Constant = [Sign] ( UnsignedNumber | ConstantIdentifier ) | CharacterString .  

ConstantIdentifier = Identifier .

```

A constant identifier that is prefixed with a sign (“+” or “–”) must denote a value of type Integer or Real. There are three standard predefined constant identifiers: Maxint denotes an implementation-defined value of type Integer; False and True denote the values of type Boolean (see Section 6.1.2).

Example of a constant definition part:

```

const  

  N = 20;  

  SpeedOfLight = 2.998e+ { meters / second } ;  

  PoleStar = 'Polaris';  

  epsilon = 1E-6;

```

6. Types

A *type* determines the set of values that variables, expressions, functions, etc., possessing that type may assume. Rules of *type compatibility* determine how types may be used together in expressions, assignments, etc.

A type definition introduces a type identifier to denote a type; the type identifier being defined must not occur in the type part of the definition except as the domain type of a pointer type (see Section 6.3). Type definitions are collected into type definition parts. Section 6.4 gives an example of a type definition part.

```

TypeDefinitionPart = [ "type" TypeDefinition ";" { TypeDefinition ";" } ].  

TypeDefinition = Identifier "=" Type  

TypeIdentifier = Identifier .

```

Types are represented by the EBNF meta-identifier *Type*. If a type representation consists only of a type identifier, then it represents the same (existing) type that the type identifier denotes. If a type

representation does not consist only of a type identifier, then it represents an entirely new type. Types are classified according to some of their properties:

$$\text{Type} = \text{SimpleType} \mid \text{StructuredType} \mid \text{PointerType}.$$

6.1. Simple Types

A simple type determines an ordered set of values, and is either the predefined Real type or an *ordinal* type. A real type identifier is a type identifier that denotes the Real type.

$$\text{SimpleType} = \text{OrdinalType} \mid \text{RealTypeIdentifier}.$$

$$\text{RealTypeIdentifier} = \text{TypeIdentifier}.$$

An ordinal type is distinguished (from the Eeal type) by the one-to-one correspondence between its values and a set of *ordinal numbers*. The ordinal numbers for any ordinal type constitute an interval of the integers.

The following three predeclared functions apply to any ordinal value x :

`ord(x)` yields the ordinal number corresponding to x ; the result is of type Integer.

`succ(x)` yields the successor of x . That is,

`succ(x) > x`, and $\text{ord}(\text{succ}(x)) = \text{ord}(x) + 1$
unless x is the largest value of its type, in which case
`succ(x)` is an error.

`pred(x)` yields the predecessor of x . That is,

`pred(x) < x`, and $\text{ord}(\text{pred}(x)) = \text{ord}(x) - 1$
unless x is the smallest value of its type, in which case
`pred(x)` is an error.

Clearly, the ordering of the values of an ordinal type is the same as the ordering of their ordinal numbers.

An ordinal type either is an *enumerated* type or one of the predefined types Integer, Char, or Boolean, or else is a *subrange* of one of these.

$$\text{OrdinalType} = \text{EnumeratedType} \mid \text{SubrangeType} \mid \text{OrdinalTypeIdentifier}.$$

$$\text{OrdinalTypeIdentifier} = \text{TypeIdentifier}.$$

An ordinal type identifier is a type identifier that denotes an ordinal type.

6.1.1. Enumerated types. An enumerated type defines a set of entirely new values and introduces a constant identifier to denote each value.

EnumeratedType = (" IdentifierList ") .

IdentifierList = Identifier { "," Identifier } .

The first identifier denotes the smallest value, which has the ordinal number zero. Every other identifier in the list denotes the successor of the value denoted by the preceding identifier. That is, the constant identifiers are listed in increasing order.

Examples of enumerated types:

(Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Blue)
 (Club, Diamond, Heart, Spade)
 (Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday,
 Saturday, Sunday)

6.1.2. Predefined simple types. The following predefined type identifiers are standard in Pascal.

Real determines an implementation-defined subset of the real numbers.

Integer includes the set of integers having an absolute value less than or equal to the implementation-defined value of the predefined constant identifier Maxint. For any integer I, $\text{ord}(I) = I$.

Boolean determines the set of truth values denoted by the predefined constant identifiers False and True. Note that `false < true` and $\text{ord}(\text{false}) = 0$.

Char determines an implementation-defined set of characters having implementation-defined ordinal numbers, such that:

(a) the digits ('0', '1', ..., '9') are numerically ordered and consecutive (e.g., `succ('0') = '1'`);

(b) if the lower-case letters ('a', 'b', ..., 'z') are present, they are alphabetically ordered (but not necessarily consecutive!); and

(c) if the upper-case letters ('A', 'B', ..., 'Z') are present, they are alphabetically ordered (but not necessarily consecutive!).

6.1.3. Subrange types. The set of values determined by a subrange type is a subset of the values of another ordinal type that is called the *host type* of the subrange type. The subrange type specifies the smallest and the largest value, and includes every value between them.

SubrangeType = *Constant* “..” *Constant* .

Both constants must possess the host type. The first constant specifies the smallest value, and must be less than or equal to the second constant which specifies the largest value.

Examples of subrange types:

1 .. N
-10 .. +10
Monday .. Friday

6.2 Structured Types

A structured type is characterized by the type(s) of its components and by its structuring method. Moreover, a structured type may contain an indication of the preferred data representation. If a structured type is prefixed with the symbol `packed`, this has no effect on the meaning of a program (with two exceptions); rather it is a hint to the compiler that storage of values of that type should be economized even at the price of some loss in efficiency of access, and even if this may expand the code necessary for expressing access to components of the structure. The two exceptions are that string types (see Section 6.2.1) are always packed, and that an actual variable parameter (see Section 11.3) must not be a component of a packed structured variable. If a component of a packed structured type also possesses a structured type, the component's type is packed only if the symbol `packed` is explicitly given in the component's type representation.

StructuredType = [“`packed`”] *UnpackedStructuredType* |
StructuredTypeIdentifier .

UnpackedStructuredType = *ArrayType* | *RecordType* | *SetType* | *FileType* .

StructuredTypeIdentifier = *TypeIdentifier* .

A structured type identifier is a type identifier that denotes a structured type.

6.2.1 Array types. An array type is a structure consisting of a fixed number of components which are all of the same type, called the *component type*. The components are in a one-to-one correspondence with the values of the *index type*.

```
ArrayType = "array" "[" IndexType { "," IndexType } "]"
           "of" ComponentType
IndexType = OrdinalType .
ComponentType = Type .
```

More than one index type may be specified, as in

packed array [T₁, T₂, ..., T_n] of C,
and this is simply an abbreviation for the notation

packed array [T₁] of packed array [T₂, ..., T_n] of C.

These two notations would also be equivalent if neither were prefixed with packed.

Examples of array types:

```
array [1..100] of Real
array [1..10, 1..20] of 0..99
array [Boolean] of Color
array [Size] of packed array ['a'..'z'] of Boolean
```

Each value of an array type is a functional (many-to-one) mapping from the entire set of index values to the set of values of the component type.

An array type is called a *string type* if it is packed, has as its component type the predefined type Char and has as its index type a subrange of Integer from 1 to n, for n greater than 1. The character strings (see Section 4) are constants of string types.

Examples:

```
packed array [1..StringLength] of Char
packed array [1..2] of Char
```

6.2.2. Record types. A record type has a fixed number of components, possibly of different types. The specific components and their types, and the values of the record type, are determined by the *field list* of the record type.

RecordType = "record" FieldList "end" .

FieldList = [(FixedPart [";" VariantPart] VariantPart) [";"]] .

```

FixedPart = RecordSection { ";" RecordSection } .

RecordSection = IdentifierList ":" Type .

FieldIdentifier = Identifier .

```

A field list may contain a *fixed part*, which specifies a fixed number of components called *fields*. A record section introduces each of the identifiers in its list to be a field identifier possessing the type given in the record section. The scope of a field identifier extends over its record type, as well as the field designators and with statements where it may be used (see Sections 7.2.2, 9.2.4, and 10.2). Thus each field identifier spelling must be unique within a record type.

Examples of record types with only fixed parts:

```

packed record
  Year: 1900..2100;
  Month: 1..12;
  Day: 1..31
end
record
  Firsname,
  Lastname: packed array [1..32] of Char;
  Age: 0..99;
  Married: Boolean
end

```

A field list may also contain a *variant part*, which specifies one or more *variants*. The structure and values of a variant are specified by its field list.

```

VariantPart = "case" VariantSelector "of" Variant { ";" Variant } .

Variant = Constant [ "," Constant ] ":" "(" FieldList ")" .

VariantSelector = { TagField ":" } TagType .

TagType = OrdinalTypeIdentifier .

TagField = Identifier .

```

A constant that prefixes a variant must denote a value of the tag type. Each such value must appear once and only once for a given variant part. If a tag field occurs in a variant selector, then it introduces its identifier as a field identifier to denote a field possessing the tag type.

Only one variant of a given variant part can be *active* at a given time. If there is a tag field, the variant that is prefixed by the value of the tag field is the active variant. If there is no tag field, then the active variant

is the one possessing the most recently accessed component.

A value of a field list determines a value of each field specified in the fixed part and a value of the variant part. A value of a variant part consists of an indication of which variant is active, a value of the tag field (if any), and a value of the active variant.

Examples of record types with variant parts:

```

record
  case NameKnown: Boolean of
    false: ( );
    true:  (Name: packed array [1..NameMax] of Char)
  end
  record
    X, Y: Real;
    Area: Real;
  case S: Shape of
    Triangle: ( Side: Real;
                  Inclination, Angle1, Angle2: Angle);
    Rectangle: ( Side1, Side2: Real;
                  Skew, Angle3: Angle );
    Circle:     ( Diameter: Real )
  end

```

6.2.3. Set types. A set type determines as its set of values the powerset of the set of values of the *base type*. That is, each value of a set type is a set that contains zero or more elements (components), and each element is a value of the base type.

SetType = “set” “of” *BaseType*

BaseType = *OrdinalType*.

Examples of set types:

```

set of Char
packed set of 0..11

```

6.2.4. File types. A file type is structured as a sequence of components having a single type (the component type), together with a position in the sequence and a mode that indicates whether the file is being generated or inspected. The number of components in the sequence, called the *length* of the file, is not fixed by the file type. A file is called *empty* if its length is zero.

FileType = “file” “of” *ComponentType*.

The component type of a file type must be an assignable type (see Section 6.5). A file that is in *inspection* mode may be positioned at any component of the sequence or at the *end-of-file* position. A file that is in *generation* mode is always positioned at end-of-file. File values are manipulated by predeclared file-handling procedures and functions (see Section 11).

The predefined structured type identifier *Text* represents a special file type in which the sequence is structured as zero or more *lines*. A line consists of zero or more characters (values of type Char) followed by a special *end-of-line* marker. A variable of type *Text* is called a *textfile*. If a nonempty *textfile* is in *inspection* mode then there is always an *end-of-line* immediately preceding the *end-of-file* position. There are several additional predeclared procedures and functions for manipulating *textfiles* (see Sections 11.5 and 12). An implementation-defined set of characters may be prohibited from *textfiles*, and writing any of these characters to a *textfile* is implementation-dependent.

6.3. Pointer Types

A pointer type is distinguished from the structured and simple types in that its set of values is *dynamic*; i.e., values of a pointer type are created and destroyed during program execution. The set of values of a pointer type always contains a special value, represented by *nil*. Every other value in the set must be created by a program using the predeclared procedure *New* (see Section 11.4.2); such values are called identifying *values* because each one identifies a variable, the so-called *identified variable* (see Section 7.3). An identified variable possesses the *domain type* of the pointer type. An identifying value and its identified variable can be destroyed using the predeclared procedure *Dispose* (see Section 11.4.2). All identifying values created by a program cease to exist when the program terminates.

PointerType = “ \uparrow ” *DomainType* | *PointerTypeIdentifier*.

DomainType = *TypeIdentifier*.

PointerTypeIdentifier = *TypeIdentifier*.

6.4. Example of a Type Definition Part

```
type
  Natural = 0..Maxint;
  Color = (Red, Yellow, Green, Blue);
```

```

Hue = set of Color;
Shape = (Triangle, Rectangle, Circle);
Year = 1900..2100;
Card = array [1..80] of Char;
String18 = packed array [1..18] of Char;
Complex = record Re, Im: Real end;
PersonPointer = ^Person;
Relationship = (Married, Coupled, Single);
Person = record
  Name, Firstname: String18;
  BirthYear: Year;
  Sex: (Male, Female);
  Father, Mother: PersonPointer;
  Friends, Children: file of PersonPointer;
  ExRelationshipCount: Natural;
  case Status: Relationship of
    Married, Coupled:
      (SignificantOther: PersonPointer);
    Single: ();
  end;
MatrixIndex = 1..N;
SquareMatrix = array[MatrixIndex, MatrixIndex]
  of Real;

```

6.5. Type Compatibility

Two types are said to be *compatible* if any of the following four conditions is true.

- (a) They are the same type.
- (b) One is a subrange of the other, or both are subranges of the same host type.
- (c) Both are set types, their base types are compatible, and either both are packed or neither is packed.
- (d) Both are string types with the same number of elements.

A type is called *assignable* if it is neither a file type nor a structured type with a component type that is not assignable.

A value possessing type T_2 is called *assignment-compatible* with a type T_1 if any of the following four conditions is true.

- (a) T_1 and T_2 are the same assignable type.
- (b) T_1 is Real and T_2 is Integer.
- (c) T_1 and T_2 are compatible ordinal types or compatible set types, and the value is a member of the set of values determined by T_1 .
- (d) T_1 and T_2 are compatible string types.

Wherever assignment-compatibility is required, and `T1` and `T2` are either compatible ordinal types or compatible set types, it is an error if the value is not a member of the set of values determined by `T1`.

7. Variables

A variable possesses a type that is determined by its declaration, and may take on values only of that type.

A variable is *undefined* if it does not have a value of its type. A variable is *totally undefined* if it is undefined and further if every component of the (structured) variable is totally undefined. When a variable is created it is totally undefined. A variable declared in a block is created when the block is activated and destroyed when the activation is terminated (see Section 10). An identified variable is created or destroyed, respectively, by the predeclared procedure `New` or `Dispose` (see Sections 6.3 and 11.4).

A variable declaration introduces one or more variable identifiers and the type that each one possesses. Variable declarations are collected into variable declaration parts.

```
VariableDeclarationPart = [ "var" VariableDeclaration ";"  
                           { VariableDeclaration ";" } ].
```

```
VariableDeclaration = IdentifierList ":" Type .
```

```
VariableIdentifier = Identifier .
```

Example of a variable declaration part:

```
var  
  W, X, Y: Real;  
  Z: Complex;  
  I, J: Integer;  
  K: 0..9;  
  P, Q: Boolean;  
  Operator: (Plus, Minus, Times);  
  GrayScale: array [0..63] of Real;  
  VideoPotential:  
    array [Color, Boolean] of Complex;  
  Light: Color;  
  F: file of Char;  
  Hue1, Hue2: set of Hue;  
  P1, P2: PersonPointer;
```

```

A, B, C: SquareMatrix;
Minneapolis, Zuerich: packed record
  Area: Real;
  Population: Natural;
  Capital: Boolean
end;

```

An access to a variable is represented by the EBNF meta-identifier *Variable*.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Variable} = & \text{EntireVariable} \mid \text{ComponentVariable} \mid \text{IdentifiedVariable} \mid \\ & \text{BufferVariable} \end{aligned}$$

7.1. Entire Variables

An entire variable represents the variable that is denoted by the variable identifier.

$$\text{EntireVariable} = \text{VariableIdentifier}$$

Examples of entire variables:

```

Input
P1
VideoPotential

```

7.2. Component Variables

A component of a structured variable is also a variable; a component variable represents an access to a component of a structured variable. The syntax of the component variable depends on the type of the structured variable.

$$\text{ComponentVariable} = \text{IndexedVariable} \mid \text{FieldDesignator} .$$

An access or reference to a component of a structured variable implies an access or reference to the structured variable.

7.2.1. Indexed variables. An indexed variable represents a component of an array variable. An array variable is a variable that possesses an array type.

$$\text{IndexedVariable} = \text{ArrayVariable} [\text{Index} \mid \text{Index} \ldots \text{Index}] .$$

$$\text{Index} = \text{OrdinalExpression} .$$

$$\text{ArrayVariable} = \text{Variable} .$$

The component accessed is the one that corresponds to the value of the index expression, which must be assignment-compatible (see Section 6.5) with the index type when the access occurs. When there are

multiple index expressions, the order of their evaluation is implementation-dependent.

Examples:

```
GrayScale[12]
GrayScale[I+J]
VideoPotential[Red, True]
```

When more than one index appears, as in

```
VideoPotential[Red, True],
```

it is simply an abbreviation for the notation

```
VideoPotential[Red][True].
```

7.2.2. Field designators. A field designator denotes a field of a record variable. A record variable is a variable that possesses a record type.

FieldDesignator = [RecordVariable “.”] FieldIdentifier .

RecordVariable = Variable .

The field that is denoted is the one corresponding to the field identifier; only the field identifiers belonging to the record type of the record variable may appear. The record variable and the “.” may be omitted inside of a with statement (see Section 9.2.4) that lists the record variable.

Examples of field designators:

```
Z.Re
VideoPotential[Red,True].Im
P2↑.Mother
```

When a variant of a record variable becomes inactive, all of the components of the variant become totally undefined. If there is no tag field in a variant part, then an access to a component of a variant makes that variant active and the other variants inactive. It is an error if a variant is or becomes inactive while there is an access or reference to any of its components. When a tag field is undefined, no variants of that variant part are active. A tag field must not be an actual variable parameter.

7.3. Identified Variables

An identified variable denotes the variable that is identified by the value of a pointer variable. A pointer variable is a variable that possesses a pointer type.

IdentifiedVariable = PointerVariable “↑” .

PointerVariable = Variable .

An access to an identified variable implies an access to the pointer variable, at which time it is an error if the pointer variable is undefined or has the value `nil`. It is an error if an identifying pointer value is destroyed when a reference to the variable that the value identifies exists.

Examples of identified variables:

$p1\uparrow$
 $p1\uparrow.Father\uparrow$
 $p1\uparrow.Friends\uparrow\uparrow$

7.4. Buffer Variables

A file variable is a variable that possesses a file type. Every file variable is associated with a so-called buffer variable.

BufferVariable = FileVariable “↑” .

FileVariable = Variable .

If the file variable possesses the type `Text`, then the buffer variable possesses the type `Char`; otherwise the buffer variable possesses the component type of the file type possessed by the file variable. The buffer variable is used to access the current component of the file variable. It is an error to perform any operation that alters the sequence, position, or mode of a file variable when a reference to the buffer variable exists. An access or reference to a buffer variable implies an access or reference to the associated file variable.

Predeclared procedures and functions that manipulate file variables are described in Sections 11.4, 11.5 and 12.

When `eoln(F)` becomes true for textfile `F` (Section 11.5.2), the buffer variable `F↑` becomes the char value space (' '). Thus `eoln(F)` is the only way to detect an end-of-line marker on `F`.

Examples of buffer variables:

$Input\uparrow$
 $P1\uparrow.Friends\uparrow$
 $P1\uparrow.Friends\uparrow\uparrow.Children\uparrow$

8. Expressions

An *expression* denotes a rule of computation that yields a value when the expression is evaluated, except when the expression activates a function and that activation is terminated by a goto statement (see Sections 9.1.3 and 10). The value that is yielded depends upon the values of the constants, bounds, and variables in the expression and also upon the operators and functions that the expression invokes.

Expression = *SimpleExpression* [*RelationalOperator SimpleExpression*].

SimpleExpression = [*Sign*] *Term* { *AddingOperator Term* } .

Term = *Factor* { *MultiplyingOperator Factor* } .

Factor = *UnsignedConstant* | *BoundIdentifier* | *Variable* |

SetConstructor | *FunctionDesignator* |

 “not” *Factor* | “(” *Expression* “)” .

UnsignedConstant = *UnsignedNumber* | *CharacterString* |

ConstantIdentifier | “nil” .

SetConstructor = [” [*ElementDescription* { “,”

ElementDescription }] ”] .

ElementDescription = *OrdinalExpression* [“..” *OrdinalExpression*] .

FunctionDesignator = *FunctionIdentifier* [*ActualParameterList*] .

RelationalOperator = “=” | “<>” | “<” | “<=” | “>” | “>=” / “in” .

AddingOperator = “+” | “-” | “or” .

MultiplyingOperator = “*” | “/” / “div” | “mod” / “and” .

An ordinal expression is an expression that possesses an ordinal type. A Boolean expression or integer expression is an ordinal expression that possesses the type Boolean or Integer, respectively.

OrdinalExpression = *Expression* .

BooleanExpression = *OrdinalExpression* .

IntegerExpression = *OrdinalExpression* .

8.1. Operands

A multiplying operator in a term has two operands: the part of the term that precedes the operator, and the factor that immediately follows the operator. An adding operator in a simple expression has two operands:

the part of the simple expression that precedes the operator, and the term that immediately follows the operator. The two operands of a relational operator are the simple expressions that immediately precede and follow the operator. The operand of a sign in a simple expression is the term that immediately follows the sign. The operand of `not` in a factor is the factor following `not`.

The order of evaluation of the operands of an operator is implementation-dependent. A standard program must not make any assumption about this order. The left operand might be evaluated before or after the right operand, or they might be evaluated in parallel. In fact, sometimes one operand might not be evaluated at all for some values of the other operand. For example, evaluating the expression `(j * (i div j))` when `j` is zero might yield zero on one implementation, where on another implementation it might be an error due to the division by zero.

The type of a factor is derived from the type of its constituent (e.g., variable or function). If the constituent's type is a subrange, then the type of the factor is the host type of the subrange; if the constituent's type is a set type with a subrange as its base type, then the type of the factor is a set type with the host type of that subrange type as its base type; otherwise, the type of the factor is the same as the type of the constituent.

The symbol `nil` possesses every pointer type and represents the nil value.

A set constructor denotes a set value. If there are no element descriptions in the set constructor, then it denotes the empty set that is a value of every set type. Otherwise, the elements of the set value are described by the element descriptions in the set constructor. All expressions in the element descriptions of a set constructor must have the same type, which is the base type of the type of the set constructor. The type of a set constructor is both packed and unpacked, and is compatible with any other set type that has a compatible base type.

An element description consisting of a single expression describes the element that has the value denoted by the expression. An element description of the form `a..b` describes an element for each value `x` that satisfies `a <= x <= b`. If `a > b`, then `a..b` denotes no elements. The order of evaluation of the expressions in an element description and

the order of evaluation of the element descriptions in a set constructor are implementation-dependent.

The evaluation of a factor consisting of a variable specifies an access to the variable and denotes the value of the variable; it is an error if the variable is undefined.

The evaluation of a factor consisting of a function designator specifies an activation of the function that is denoted by the function identifier (see Section 10.3). Any actual parameters are substituted for their corresponding formal parameters (see Section 11.3). Upon completion of the activation's algorithm, the factor denotes the value of the result of the activation; it is an error if the result is undefined.

8.2 Operators

The rules of composition specify operator *precedences* according to four classes of operators. The operator `not` has the highest precedence, followed by the so-called multiplying operators, then the so-called adding operators, and finally, with the lowest precedence, the relational operators. Sequences of operators of the same precedence are executed from left to right. The rules of precedence are reflected in the EBNF rules for *Expression*, *Simple-Expression*, *Term*, and *Factor* (above).

Operators are also classified as arithmetic, Boolean, set, and relational operators according to their operand and result types.

8.2.1. Arithmetic operators. An arithmetic operator takes integer or real operands and yields an integer or real results. This table summarizes operators that take one operand (the signs).

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Operation</i>	<i>Type of Operand</i>	<i>Type of Result</i>
<code>+</code>	identity	Integer or Real	same as operand
<code>-</code>	sign inversion	Integer or Real	same as operand

This table summarizes the operators that take two operands.

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Operation</i>	<i>Type of Operands</i>	<i>Type of Result</i>
<code>+</code>	addition	Integer or Real	Integer or Real
<code>-</code>	subtraction	Integer or Real	Integer or Real
<code>*</code>	multiplication	Integer or Real	Integer or Real
<code>/</code>	division	Integer or Real	Real
<code>div</code>	division	Integer	Integer
<code>mod</code>	modulo	Integer	Integer

The result type of addition, subtraction and multiplication is Integer if both operands are Integer, otherwise it is Real.

Evaluating a term of the form x / y is an error if y is zero.

Evaluating a term of the form $x \text{ div } y$ is an error if y is zero; otherwise the term yields the value satisfying the two rules:

- (a) $\text{abs}(x) - \text{abs}(y) < \text{abs}((x \text{ div } y) * y) \leq \text{abs}(x)$
- (b) $x \text{ div } y = 0$ if $\text{abs}(x) < \text{abs}(y)$, otherwise $x \text{ div } y$ is positive if x and y have the same sign and is negative if x and y have different signs.

Evaluation of a term of the form $x \text{ mod } y$ is an error if y is less than or equal to zero; otherwise there is an integer k such that $x \text{ mod } y$ satisfies the following relation:

$$0 \leq x \text{ mod } y = x - k * y < y.$$

For any integer operators, if both operands are in the range $-\text{Maxint}..\text{Maxint}$ and if the correct result is in that range, then a standard implementation must yield the correct result. However, if the operands or result is not in the range $-\text{Maxint}..\text{Maxint}$, an implementation may choose either to perform the operation correctly or to treat the operation as an error.

Any operator or predeclared function (see Section 11.5) that yields a real result must always be considered to be approximate, not exact. The accuracy of real operations and predeclared functions is implementation-defined.

8.2.2. Boolean Operators. The Boolean operators are summarized by the following table.

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Operation</i>	<i>Type of Operands</i>	<i>Type of Result</i>
or	logical “or”	Boolean	Boolean
and	logical “and”	Boolean	Boolean
not	logical “not”	Boolean	Boolean

8.2.3. Set Operators. The set operators are summarized by the following table. The two operands must always possess compatible types (see Section 6.5). The result type is packed if both operand types are packed, and is non-packed if both operand types are non-packed.

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Operation</i>	<i>Type of Operands</i>	<i>Type of Result</i>
+	set union	set of T	set of T
-	set difference	set of T	set of T
*	set intersection	set of T	set of T

8.2.4. Relational Operators. The relational operators are summarized by the following table. With the exception of the operator `in`, the types possessed by the operands either must be compatible, or one must be Real and the other must be Integer. For `in`, the first (left) operand must possess an ordinal type that is compatible with the base type of the set type possessed by the second operand.

The expression `x <= y` where `x` and `y` are sets yields true if every member of `x` is a member of `y`, i.e., if `x` is a subset of `y`.

The ordering of compatible strings is according to the ordering of the values of type Char (see Section 6.1.2).

Operator	Operation	Type of Operands	Type of Result
=	equality	simple, pointer, set, or string	Boolean
<>	inequality	simple, pointer, set, or string	Boolean
<=	less than or equal	simple or string	Boolean
<=	set inclusion	set	Boolean
>=	greater than or equal	simple or string	Boolean
>=	set inclusion	set	Boolean
<	less than	simple or string	Boolean
>	greater than	simple or string	Boolean
in	set membership	ordinal and set	Boolean

Examples of factors:

X	15
(W + X + Y)	$\sin(X+Y)$
[Red, Light, Green]	[1, 5, 10..19, 60]
not P	

Examples of terms:

X * Y	$I / (1-I)$
Q and not P	$(X \leq Y) \text{ and } (Y < W)$

Examples of simple expressions:

X + GrayScale[2 * I]	$-X$
P or Q	$Hue1 + Hue2$
I * J + 1	

Examples of expressions:

X = 1.5	$P \leq Q$
(I < J) = (J < K)	Light in Hue1

9. Statements

Statements denote algorithmic actions, and are said to be *executable*. A statement may be prefixed by a label which can be referred to by goto statements. Statements are collected into statement parts.

Statement = [*Label* ":"] (*SimpleStatement* | *StructuredStatement*).

StatementPart = *CompoundStatement* .

9.1. Simple Statements

A simple statement is a statement of which no part constitutes another statement. The empty statement consists of no symbols and denotes no action.

SimpleStatement = *EmptyStatement* | *AssignmentStatement* |

ProcedureStatement | *GotoStatement* .

EmptyStatement = .

9.1.1. Assignment statements. The assignment statement serves to access the variable or function–activation result and to replace its current value by the value obtained by evaluating the expression.

AssignmentStatement = (*Variable* | *FunctionIdentifier*) ":" *Expression* .

The value of the expression must be assignment–compatible (see Section 6.5) with the type of the variable or function identifier. The order of accessing the variable or result and evaluating the expression is implementation–dependent. The access to the variable establishes a reference to the variable that exists until the value is assigned.

Examples of assignment statement :

```
X := Y + GrayScale[31]
P := (1 <= I) and (I < 10)
I := sqr(K) - (I * J)
Hue2 := [Blue, succ(C)]
```

9.1.2. Procedure statements. A procedure statement serves to activate the procedure denoted by the procedure identifier. The procedure statement may contain a list of *actual parameters* which are substituted in place of their corresponding *formal parameters* defined in the procedure declaration (see 11.1).

ProcedureStatement = *ProcedureIdentifier* [*ActualParameterList* |
WriteParameterList].

If the procedure identifier denotes the standard procedure `Write` or `Writeln`, then the actual parameters must follow the syntax specified for a *WriteParameterList*. If the procedure identifier denotes any other predeclared procedure, then the actual parameters must satisfy the rules stated in Sections 11.4 and 12.

Examples of procedure statements:

```
Next
Transpose(A,N,N)
Bisect(Fct, -1.0, +1.0, X)
Writeln(Output, ' Title')
```

9.1.3. Goto statements. A goto statement serves to indicate that further processing should continue at another part of the program, namely at the program–point denoted by the label (see Sections 10.1 and 10.3).

GotoStatement = “`goto`” *Label*.

The statement that is prefixed by a label and each goto statement that refers to that label must satisfy one of the following two rules.

- (a) The statement either must contain the goto statement or else must be one of the statements in a statement sequence (see Section 9.2) that contains the goto statement.
- (b) The statement must be one of the statements in the statement sequence of the compound statement of the statement part of the block where the label is declared, and the goto statement must be contained in the procedure and function declaration part of that block (see Section 10.1).

The effect of these rules is to prevent goto statements transferring control into a structured statement or a procedure or function from outside. The first rule also disallows a goto transferring control between “branches” of a conditional statement.

If the label and the goto statement are not in the same statement part, then every activation that does not satisfy one of the following two conditions is terminated (see Section 10.3).

- (a) The activation contains the program-point.
- (b) The activation contains the activation-point of another activation that is not terminated (i.e., that satisfies one of these two conditions).

9.2. Structured Statements

Structured statements are constructs composed of other statements which have to be executed either in sequence (compound statement), conditionally (conditional statements), repeatedly (repetitive statements), or within an expanded scope (with statement).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{StructuredStatement} = & \text{CompoundStatement} \mid \text{ConditionalStatement} \mid \\ & \text{RepetitiveStatement} \mid \text{WithStatement}. \end{aligned}$$

A statement sequence is a sequence of statements that are to be executed in the sequence that they are written, except where a goto statement indicates otherwise.

$$\text{StatementSequence} = \text{Statement} \{ \dots \text{Statement} \}.$$

Statement sequences are used in compound statements (Section 9.2.1), and repeat statements (Section 9.2.3.2).

9.2.1. Compound statements. A compound statement specifies the execution of the statement sequence. The symbols begin and end act as statement brackets.

$$\text{CompoundStatement} = \text{"begin"} \text{ StatementSequence } \text{"end"}.$$

Examples of compound statements:

```
begin      end
begin      W := X; X := ~; Y := W  end
```

9.2.2. Conditional statements. A conditional statement selects for execution one of its component statements.

$$\text{ConditionalStatement} = \text{IfStatement} \mid \text{CaseStatement}.$$

9.2.2.1. If statements. The if statement specifies that the statement following the symbol then be executed only if the Boolean expression yields true. If it is false, then the statement following the symbol else, if any, is to be executed.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{IfStatement} = & \text{"if"} \text{ BooleanExpression } \text{"then"} \text{ Statement} \\ & [\text{"else"} \text{ Statement}]. \end{aligned}$$

Note: The syntactic ambiguity arising from the construct

```
if e1 then if e2 then s1 else s2
```

is resolved by interpreting the construct as equivalent to

```
if e1 then
begin if e2 then s1 else s2 end
```

Examples of if statements:

```
if X < 1.5 then W := X + Y else W := 1.5
if P1 <> nil then P1 := P1^.Father
```

9.2.2.2. Case statements. The case statement consists of an ordinal expression (the case index) and a list of statements, each being prefixed by one or more constants of the type of the case index. It specifies that the one statement be executed that is prefixed by the value of the case index; it is an error if no constant denoting that value prefixes any statement. Each value must be specified by at most one case constant.

CaseStatement = "case" CaseIndex "of"

Case { ";" Case } [";"] "end" .

CaseIndex = OrdinalExpression .

Case = Constant { "," Constant } ":" Statement .

Examples of case statements:

```
case Operator of
  Plus:   W := X + Y;
  Minus:  W := X - Y;
  Times:  W := X * Y
end
case I of
  1:   Y := sin(X);
  2:   Y := cos(X);
  3:   Y := exp(X);
  4:   Y := ln(X)
end
case P1^.Status of
  Married, Coupled: P2 := P1^.SignificantOther;
  Single:   P2 := nil;
end
```

9.2.3. Repetitive statements. Repetitive statements specify that certain statements are to be executed repeatedly. If the number of repetitions is known beforehand, i.e., before the repetitions are started, the for statement is often the appropriate construct; otherwise the while or repeat statement should be used.

RepetitiveStatement = *WhileStatement* | *RepeatStatement* | *ForStatement*.

9.2.3.1. While statement.

WhileStatement = “while” BooleanExpression “do” Statement.

The statement is repeatedly executed until the expression becomes false. If its value is false at the beginning, the statement is not executed at all. The while statement

```
while B do S
```

is equivalent to (unless S contains a labelled statement):

```
if B then begin S; while B do S end
```

Examples of while statements:

```
while GrayScale[I] < : do I := succ(I)
  while I > 0 do
    begin
      if odd(I) then Y:= Y * X;
      I := I div 2;
      X := sqr(X)
    end
  while not eof(F) do begin
    P(F↑); Get(F)
  end
```

9.2.3.2. Repeat statements.

RepeatStatement = “repeat” StatementSequence
“until” BooleanExpression.

The statement sequence is repeatedly executed (and at least once) until the expression becomes true. The repeat statement

```
repeat S until B
```

is equivalent to

```
begin S; if not B then repeat S until B end
```

unless S contains a labelled statement.

Examples of repeat statements:

```
repeat K := I mod J; I := J; J := K until J = 0
repeat
  P(F↑);
  Get(F)
until eof(F)
```

9.2.3.3. For statements. The for statement indicates that a statement is to be repeatedly executed while a progression of values is assigned to a variable that is called the *control variable* of the for statement.

```

ForStatement = "for" ControlVariable ":"= InitialValue
    ("to" | "downto") FinalValue "do" Statement .
ControlVariable = VariableIdentifier .
InitialValue = OrdinalExpression .
FinalValue = OrdinalExpression .

```

The control variable must be local to the block (see Section 10.2) whose statement part contains the for statement, and must possess an ordinal type that is compatible with the types of the initial value and final value.

A statement *s* is said to *threaten* a variable *v* if any of the following conditions are true.

- (a) *s* is an assignment statement that assigns to *v*.
- (b) *s* contains *v* occurring as an actual variable parameter (see section 11.3.2.2).
- (c) *s* is a procedure statement that activates the predeclared procedure `read` or `readln` and *v* is one of its actual parameters.
- (d) *s* is a for statement and *v* is its control variable.

No statement inside the for statement must threaten the control variable. also, no procedure or function declared local to the block in which the control variable is declared may contain a statement that threatens the control variable. these rules ensure that the repeated statement cannot alter the value of the control variable.

Let *t₁* and *t₂* be new variables (not otherwise accessible) possessing the same type as *v*, and let *P* be a new variable possessing type Boolean. then with the exceptions noted in comments, the following equivalences hold.

```
for v := e1 to e2 do s
```

is equivalent to

```

begin
  T1 := e1; T2 := e2;
  if T1 <= T2 then begin
```

176 Pascal Report

```
{T2 must be assignment-compatible with the type of V}
  V := T1; P:= false
  repeat
    S;
    if V = T2 then P := true else V := succ(V)
  until P
end
{ V becomes undefined }
end
```

and

```
for V := e1 downto e2 do
```

is equivalent to

```
begin
  T1 := e1; T2 := e2;
  if T1 >= T2 then begin
    {T2 must be assignment-compatible with the type of V}
    V := T1; P := false;
    repeat
      S;
      if V = T2 then P := true
      else V := pred(V)
    until P
  end
  { V becomes undefined }
end
```

Examples of for statements:

```
for I := 1 to 63 do
  if GrayScale[I] > 0.5 then write ('*')
  else write (' ')
for I := 1 to n do
  for J := 1 to n do
    begin
      X := 0;
      for K := 1 to n do
        X := X + A[I,K] * B[K,J];
      C[I,J] := X
    end
  for Light := Red to pink(Light) do
    if Light in Hue2 then Q(Light)
```

9.2.4. With statements. A with statement accesses and establishes a reference to each record variable in its list, and then executes the component statement. The reference exists during the execution of the component statement.

WithStatement = “with” *RecordVariableList* “do” *Statement* .

RecordVariableList = *RecordVariable* { “,” *RecordVariable* } .

The scope (see Section 10.2) of each of the field identifiers of the type of a (single) record variable listed in a with statement is extended to include the component statement. Within this extended scope, the field identifier can occur in a field designator without respecifying the record variable, and will denote the appropriate field of the referenced variable.

The notation

```
with r1, r2, ..., rn do S
```

is an abbreviation for the notation

```
with r1 do
  with r1 do
    ...
      with rn do S
```

Example of with statement:

```
with Date do
  if Month = 12 then
    begin Month := 1; Year := succ(Year) end
  else Month := succ(Month)
```

This is equivalent to

```
if Date.Month = 12 then begin
  Date.Month := 1; Date.Year := succ(Date.Year)
end else Date.Month := succ(Date.Month)
```

10. Blocks, Scope, and Activations

Blocks are the basis for constructing programs (see Section 13) and procedures and functions (see Section 11). The *scope* rules determine where an identifier spelling that is introduced in a particular place can be used, based on the static (textual) program structure. The *activation* rules determine what entity (e.g., variable) is denoted by a particular identifier or label, based on the dynamic (execution) program structure.

10.1. Blocks

A block consists of several definition and declaration parts, any of which may be empty, and a statement part.

Block = *LabelDeclarationPart* *ConstantDefinitionPart* *TypeDefinitionPart*
VariableDeclarationPart *ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart*
StatementPart.

The label declaration part introduces zero or more labels, each of which must prefix one statement in the statement part.

LabelDeclarationPart = [“label” *DigitSequence* [“,” *DigitSequence*] “;”].
Label = *DigitSequence*.

The *spelling* of a label is the apparent integral value that its digit sequence describes in the usual decimal notation; the value must not exceed 9999.

10.2. Scope

A definition or declaration introduces a spelling of an identifier or a label and associates the spelling with a specific meaning (e.g., a variable identifier). The parts of a program in which every occurrence of that spelling must take on that meaning are collectively called the *scope* of the introduction (definition or declaration). The occurrence of a spelling in its introduction must precede every other occurrence of that spelling within the scope of the introduction, with one exception. The exception is that a type–identifier spelling may occur as the domain type of a pointer type (see Section 6.3) anywhere in the type definition part that contains the spelling’s introduction.

Each introduction is effective for some region of the program, as described below. The scope of the introduction is that region less any enclosed region for which another introduction of the same spelling is effective.

The following introductions are effective for the block in which the introduction occurs: a label in a label declaration part; a constant identifier in a constant definition part or in an enumerated type; a type identifier in a type definition part; a variable identifier in a variable declaration part; a procedure identifier in a procedure declaration (see Section 11.1); and a function identifier in a function declaration (see Section 11.2). These labels and identifiers are said to be *local* to the block.

The implicit introduction of standard predefined and predeclared

identifiers is effective for a region that surrounds every program.

The introduction of a field identifier in a record type is effective for each of the following regions:

- (a) the record type itself;
- (b) the component statement of a with statement where the record variable of the with statement possesses that record type; and
- (c) the field-identifier part of a field designator where the record-variable part of the field designator possesses that record type.

In the case of (c), the field-identifier part is excluded from all other enclosing scopes.

The introduction of a parameter identifier in a parameter list (see Section 11.3.1) is effective for the parameter list. Furthermore, if the parameter list is in the procedure heading of a procedure declaration or in the function heading of a function declaration, then a variable identifier, bound identifier, procedure identifier, or function identifier that has the same spelling as the parameter identifier is introduced effective for the block of that procedure declaration or function declaration.

10.3. Activations

An activation of a program (see Section 13), or a procedure or function (see Section 11) is an activation of the block of the program, procedure, or function.

An activation of a block is said to *contain* the following entities, which exist until the activation terminates.

- (a) An *algorithm* that is specified by the statement part of the block; the algorithm commences when the block is activated, and completion of the algorithm terminates the activation. (The activation might instead terminate due to a goto statement — see Section 9.1.3.)
- (b) A *program-point* in the algorithm corresponding to each label that prefixes a statement in the statement part of the block. Each appearance of that label in a goto statement within the activation denotes that program-point.
- (c) A *variable* for each variable identifier that is local to the block; when the algorithm commences, the variable is

totally undefined unless the variable identifier is a program parameter. Each appearance of that variable identifier within the activation denotes that variable.

- (d) A *procedure* for each procedure identifier that is local to the block; the procedure has the block and formal parameters of the procedure declaration that introduced the procedure identifier. Each occurrence of that procedure identifier within the activation denotes that procedure.
- (e) A *function* for each function identifier that is local to the block; the function has the block, formal parameters, and result type of the function declaration that introduced the function identifier. Each occurrence of that function identifier within the activation denotes that function.
- (f) A *variable* for each variable identifier that is a formal value parameter identifier for the block; when the algorithm commences, the variable has the value of the corresponding actual parameter in the procedure statement or function designator that activated the procedure or function. Each occurrence of that variable identifier within the activation denotes that variable.
- (g) A *reference* for each variable identifier that is a formal variable parameter identifier for the block; the reference is to the variable that is denoted by the corresponding actual parameter when the algorithm commences. Each occurrence of that variable identifier within the activation denotes the referenced variable.
- (h) A *reference* to a procedure or function for each formal procedural or functional parameter identifier for the block; the reference is to the procedure or function that is denoted by the corresponding actual parameter when the algorithm commences. Each occurrence of that procedure identifier or function identifier within the activation denotes that procedure or function.
- (i) If the activated block is a function block, a *result* that is undefined when the algorithm commences.

An activation of the block of a procedure or function is said to be *within* the activation that contains the procedure or function. If an activation A is within an activation B, then A is also said to be *within*

any other activation that B is within.

A procedure statement or function designator that is contained in an algorithm and that specifies the activation of a block is called the *activation-point* of that activation.

11. Procedures and Functions

Procedures and functions are named program parts that are activated by procedure statements (Section 9.1.2) and function designators (Section 8.1), respectively. The programmer can declare new procedures and functions as needed. Procedure declarations and function declarations are collected into procedure and function declaration parts.

ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart =
 [(*ProcedureDeclaration* | *FunctionDeclaration*) “;”].

In addition, each implementation is required to provide numerous “predeclared” procedures and functions. Since these, as all such entities, are assumed to be declared in a scope surrounding the program, no conflict arises from a declaration redefining the same identifier within the program.

11.1. Procedure Declarations

A procedure declaration serves to introduce a procedure identifier, and to associate the identifier with a block and possibly with a formal parameter list. The procedure heading of a procedure declaration introduces the procedure identifier and the formal parameter list.

A procedure may be declared by a single procedure declaration consisting of the procedure heading and the block. This is the most common form.

Alternatively, it may be declared with a “forward declaration”: one procedure declaration consists of the procedure heading and the directive `forward`, and a second declaration in the same procedure and function declaration part consists of a procedure identification and the block. The procedure identifier in the procedure identification must be the identifier introduced by the first declaration. Note that the formal parameter list, if any, is not specified in the second declaration.

182 Pascal Report

*ProcedureDeclaration = ProcedureHeading ";" Block |
ProcedureHeading ";" Directive | ProcedureIdentification ";" Block .*
ProcedureHeading = "procedure" Identifier [FormalParameterList] .
ProcedureIdentification = "procedure" ProcedureIdentifier .
ProcedureIdentifier = Identifier .

The use of the procedure identifier in a procedure statement within the block of its declaration implies recursive execution of the procedure.

Example of procedure declarations:

```
procedure ReadInteger (var F: Text; var X: Integer);  
  var S: Natural;  
begin  
  while F↑ <> ' ' do Get();  
  S := 0;  
  while F↑ in ['0'..'9'] do begin  
    S := 10 * S + (ord(F)-ord('0'));  
    Get(F)  
  end;  
  X := S  
end { ReadInteger } ;  
  
procedure Bisect(function F(X: Real): Real;  
                 A, B: Real; var Z: Real);  
  var M: Real;  
begin { assume F(A) < 0 and F(B) > 0 }  
  while abs(A-B) > 1e-10 * abs(A) do begin  
    M := (A + B) / 2.0;  
    if F(M) < 0 then A := M else B := M  
  end;  
  Z := M  
end { Bisect } ;  
  
procedure GCD(M, N: Integer; var X, Y, Z: Integer);  
  { Greatest Common Divisor X of M and N, assuming  
    M >= 0 and N > 0; Ended Euclid's Algorithm. }  
  var A1, A2, B1, B2, C, D, Q, R: Integer;  
begin  
  A1 := 0; A2 := 1; B1 := 1; B2 := 0;  
  C := M; D := N;  
  while D <> 0 do begin A1*M+B1*N = D, A2*M+B2*N = C  
                           and GCD(C,D) = GCD(M,N) }
```

```

Q := C div R;  R := C mod D;
A2 := A2 - Q*A1;  B2 := B2 - Q*B1;
C := D;  D := R;
R := A1;  A1 := A2;  A2 := R;
R := B1;  B1 := B2;  B2 := R
end;
X := C;  Y := A2;  Z := B2
{ X = GCD(M,N) = Y*M + Z*N }
end { GCD };

```

11.2 Function Declarations

A function declaration serves to introduce a function identifier, and to associate the identifier with a result type, with a block, and possibly with a formal parameter list. The function heading of a function declaration introduces the function identifier, the result type, and the formal parameter list.

A function may be declared by a single function declaration consisting of the function heading and the block. This is the most common form.

Alternatively, it may be declared with a “forward declaration”: one function declaration consists of the function heading and the directive `forward`, and a second declaration in the same procedure and function declaration part consists of a function identification and the block. The function identifier in the function identification must be the identifier introduced by the first declaration. Note that the formal parameter list, if any, and the result type are not specified in the second declaration.

```

FunctionDeclaration = FunctionHeading ";" Block |
FunctionHeading ";" Directive | FunctionIdentification ";" Block .
FunctionHeading = "function" Identifier [ FormalParameterList ] |
";;" ResultType .
ResultType = OrdinalTypeIdentifier | RealTypeIdentifier |
PointerTypeIdentifier .
FunctionIdentification = "function" FunctionIdentifier .
FunctionIdentifier = Identifier .

```

The block of a function declaration must contain at least one assignment to the function identifier. The use of the function identifier in a function designator within the block of its declaration implies recursive execution of the function.

Example of function declarations.

```

function sqrt(X: Real): Real;
{ Newton's method }
var X0, X1: Real;
begin
  X1 := X; { X > 1, Newt n's method }
  repeat X0 := X1; X1 := (X0 + X/X0)*0.5
  until abs(X1 - X0) < Ep * X1;
  sqrt := X0
end { sqrt } ;

function Max(A: Vector; N: Integer): Real;
{Return the maximum value of elements A[1], ..., A[N].}
var X: Real; I: Integer;
begin
  X := A[1];
  for I := 2 to N do begin
    { X = Max( A[1], ..., A[I-1] ) }
    if X < A[I] then X := A[I]
  end;
  { X = Max( A[1], ..., A[N] ) }
  Max := X
end { Max } ;

function GCD(M, N: Natural): Natural;
begin
  if N = 0 then GCD := M else GCD := GCD(N, M mod N)
end;

function Power(X: Real; Y: Natural): Real;
var W, Z: Real; I: Natural;
begin
  W := X; Z := 1; I := Y;
  while I > 0 do begin { Z ^ (W ** I) = X ** Y }
    if odd(I) then Z := Z * W;
    I := I div 2;
    W := sqr(W)
  end;
  { Z = X ** Y }
  Power := Z
end { Power } ;

```

11.3 Parameters

Parameters allow each activation of a procedure or function to operate on entities (values, variables, procedures, functions) that are specified

at the activation point (see Section 10.3) by an actual parameter list. The formal parameter list in the procedure or function heading determines the identifiers by which those entities are known in the block of the procedure or function, and the nature and type required of the actual parameters.

The actual parameters for predeclared procedures and functions do not always conform to the rules for ordinary procedures and functions (see Sections 11.4, 11.5 and 12).

11.3.1. Formal parameter lists.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{FormalParameterList} &= (" \text{FormalParameterSection} \\ &\quad \{ ";" \text{FormalParameterSection} \} ") . \\ \text{FormalParameterSection} &= \text{ValueParameterSpecification} \mid \\ &\quad \text{VariableParameterSpecification} \mid \\ &\quad \text{ProceduralParameterSpecification} \mid \text{FunctionalParameterSpecification} . \end{aligned}$$

The parameters specified by a formal parameter section are either value, variable, procedural, or functional parameters.

11.3.1.1. Formal value and variable parameters. A value or variable parameter specification introduces each of the identifiers in its identifier list as a variable identifier. If a type identifier occurs, it denotes the type possessed by each variable identifier. If a conformant–array schema occurs, each of the variable identifiers is called a conformant–array parameter, and the type that it possesses depends on the type of the actual parameter. Within a given activation, all formal parameters defined in the same formal parameter section possess the same type.

Note: Conformant–array schemas are not supported by all implementations of Pascal. In particular, Level 0 implementations do not support them, whereas Level 1 implementations do.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ValueParameterSpecification} &= \text{IdentifierList} ":" (\text{TypeIdentifier} \\ &\quad \text{ConformantArraySchema}) . \\ \text{VariableParameterSpecification} &= "var" \text{IdentifierList} ":" \\ &\quad (\text{TypeIdentifier} \mid \text{ConformantArraySchema}) . \\ \text{ConformantArraySchema} &= \text{PackedConformantArraySchema} \mid \\ &\quad \text{UnpackedConformantArraySchema} . \end{aligned}$$

```

PackedConformantArraySchema = "packed" "array"
  "[" IndexTypeSpecification "] " of " TypeIdentifier .
UnpackedConformantArraySchema = "array"
  "[" IndexTypeSpecification { ";" IndexTypeSpecification } "]"
  "of" ( TypeIdentifier | ConformantArraySchema ) .
IndexTypeSpecification = Identifier ":" Identifier ":" OrdinalTypeIdentifier .
BoundIdentifier = Identifier .

```

An index type specification introduces the two identifiers as bound identifiers possessing the type denoted by the ordinal type identifier. The conformant–array schema

array[Low1..High1: T1; Low2..High2: T2] of T

is simply an abbreviation for

array[Low1..High1: T1] of array[Low2..High2: T2] of T

Example of a conformant–array parameter:

```

function Max (A: array [L .. H: Integer] of Real;
              N: Integer): Real;
{Return the maximum value of elements A[L],...,A[N].}
{Program derived from function Max shown in 11.2.}
  var X: Real;  I: Integer;
begin
  X:= A[L];
  for I := succ(L) to N do begin
    { X = Max( A[L],...,A[I-1] ) }
    if X < A[I] then X := A[I];
  end;
  { X = Max( A[L],...,A[N] ) }
  Max := X
end { Max } ;

```

11.3.1.2. Formal procedural and functional parameters. A procedural parameter specification introduces the procedure identifier with any associated formal parameter list defined by the procedure heading.

ProceduralParameterSpecification = *ProcedureHeading* .

A functional parameter specification introduces the function identifier with the result type and any associated formal parameter list defined by the function heading.

FunctionalParameterSpecification = *FunctionHeading* .

11.3.2. Actual parameter lists. An actual parameter list at an activation point, i.e., at a procedure statement or a function designator, specifies the actual parameters that are to be substituted for the formal parameters of the procedure or function for that activation. If the procedure or function has no formal parameter list, then there must be no actual parameter list. The correspondence between actual parameters and formal parameters is established by positions of the parameters in their respective lists. The order of substitution of actual parameters in a list is implementation-dependent.

ActualParameterList = “(” *Actual Parameter* { “,” *ActualParameter* } “)” .

All actual parameters at a given activation point that correspond to formal conformant–array parameters defined in the same formal parameter section must possess the same type, which must be conformable (Section 11.3.4) with the conformant–array schema of the formal parameter section. All of the corresponding formal parameters within a given activation have the same type, which is derived through the conformant–array schema from the type of the actual parameter(s) (see Section 11.3.4).

11.3.2.1. Actual value parameters. An actual value parameter is an expression. The formal parameter denotes a variable that is assigned the value of the actual parameter when the variable is created (see Section 10.3).

If the formal parameter is not a conformant–array parameter, then the value of the actual parameter must be assignment–compatible (see Section 6.5) with the type of the formal parameter.

If the formal parameter is a conformant–array parameter, then the type of the actual parameter must not be a conformant type (see Section 11.3.4).

11.3.2.2. Actual variable parameters. An actual variable parameter is a variable. Throughout the activation the formal parameter denotes the variable that is denoted by the actual parameter when the activation

commences (see Section 10.3). The actual parameter must denote neither a component of a packed array or record variable nor a tag field. If the formal parameter is not a conformant–array parameter, then the actual parameter and the formal parameter must possess the same type.

11.3.2.3. Actual procedural parameters. An actual procedural parameter is a procedure identifier. The formal parameter denotes the procedure that is denoted by the actual parameter (see Section 10.3). The formal parameter lists, if any, of the formal and actual parameters must be congruent (Section 11.3.3).

11.3.2.4. Actual functional Parameters. An actual functional parameter is a function identifier. The formal parameter denotes the function that is denoted by the actual parameter (see Section 10.3). The result types of the formal and actual parameters must denote the same type. The formal parameter lists, if any, of the formal and actual parameters must be congruent (Section 11.3.3).

11.3.3. Parameter-list congruity Two formal parameter lists are *congruent* if they have the same number of parameter sections, and if corresponding formal parameter sections satisfy one of the following conditions.

- (a) Both are value parameter specifications with the same number of identifiers in their identifier lists, and either they both contain type identifiers that denote the same type or else they both contain equivalent conformant–array schemas.
- (b) Both are variable parameter specifications with the same number of identifiers in their identifier lists, and either they both contain type identifiers that denote the same type or else they both contain equivalent conformant–array schemas.
- (c) Both are procedural parameter specifications with congruent formal parameter lists.
- (d) Both are functional parameter specifications with congruent formal parameter lists and with result types that denote the same type.

Two conformant array schemas (each with a single index type specification) are *equivalent* if all three of the following conditions are true.

- (a) The ordinal type identifiers in the index type specifications denote the same type.
- (b) Either each contains a component conformant–array schema and the component schemas are equivalent, or else each contains a component type identifier and the component type identifiers denote the same type.
- (c) Both schemas are packed conformant–array schemas or else both are non–packed conformant–array schemas.

Example of two equivalent conformant array schemas:

```
array [L1..H1: Integer; L2..H2: Color] of
      packed array [L3..H3: T2] of T

array [Low1..High1: Integer] of
      array [Low2..High2: Color] of
          packed array [Low3..High3: T2] of T
```

11.3.4. Conformability and conformant types. An array type T (with a single index type) is said to be *conformable* with a conformant array schema S (with a single index type specification) if all of the following conditions are true. Let I represent the ordinal type identifier of the index type specification of S .

- (a) The index type of T is compatible with the type denoted by I .
- (b) Every value of the index type of T is a member of the set of values of the type denoted by I .
- (c) If S does not contain a conformant–array schema, then the component type of T is the same as the type denoted by the type identifier in S ; otherwise, the component type of T is conformable with the component schema of S .
- (d) T is packed if and only if S is a packed conformant–array schema.

Wherever conformability is required, it is an error if condition (b) does not hold.

A type that is called a conformant type derived through S from T is an array type that has the same index type as T , is packed if and only if T

is packed, and has a component type that either is the same type as the component type of T or else, it is contains another component conformant array schema, is a conformant type derived through the component schema from the component type of T . The bound identifiers introduced in the index type specification denote the smallest and largest values of the index type of the conformant type.

11.4. Predeclared Procedures

11.4.1. File handling procedures. There are several predeclared procedures that are specifically defined for use with textfiles. These are described in detail in Section 12. The following procedures operate on any file variable f (see Sections 6.4.2 and 7.4).

`Rewrite(f)` causes f to have an empty sequence and to be in generation mode.

`Put(f)` is an error if f is undefined or is not in generation mode, or if the buffer variable $f\uparrow$ is undefined. Appends the value of $f\uparrow$ to the end of the sequence of f .

`Reset(f)` causes f to be placed in inspection mode, and the position in its sequence becomes the first position. If the sequence is empty, `eof(f)` becomes true and $f\uparrow$ becomes totally undefined; otherwise, `eof(f)` becomes false and $f\uparrow$ takes on the value of the first component of the sequence.

`Get(f)` is an error if f is undefined or if `eof(f)` is true. Causes the position in the sequence to be advanced to the next component, $f\uparrow$, and $f\uparrow$ to take on its value; if no next component exists, `eof(f)` becomes true and $f\uparrow$ becomes totally undefined.

In each of the following definitions, all occurrences of f denote the same file non-text file variable, the symbols v, v_1, \dots, v_n represent variables, and e, e_1, \dots, e_n represent expressions. Note that the variables v, v_1, \dots, v_n and e, e_1, \dots, e_n are not actual variable parameters, and thus they may be components of packed arrays or records. `Read` and `Write` of textfiles are defined in Section 12.

`Read(f,v1,...,vn)` is equivalent to the statement
`begin Read(f,v1);...;Read(f,vn) end`

`Read(f,v)` is equivalent to the statement
`begin v:= f↑; Get(f) end`

`Write(f,e1,...,en)` is equivalent to the statement
`begin Write(f,e1);...;Write(f,en) end`

`Write(f,e)` is equivalent to the statement
`begin f↑ := e; Put(f) end`

11.4.2. Dynamic allocation procedures. Dynamic allocation procedures are the means by which new pointer values and their identified variables are created (`New`) and destroyed (`Dispose`). In these descriptions, `p` is a pointer variable, `q` is a pointer expression, and `c1,...,cn`, `k1,...,kn` are constants. Note that `p` is not an actual variable parameter, and thus it may be a component of a packed array or record.

`New(p)` creates a new identifying pointer value having the type that is possessed by `p` and assigns it to `p`. The identified variable `p↑` is totally undefined.

`New(p,c1,...,cn)` creates a new identifying pointer value having the type that is possessed by `p` and assigns it to `p`. The identified variable `p↑` is totally undefined. The domain type of that pointer type must be a record type with variant part. The first constant (`c1`) selects a variant from the variant part; the next constant, if any, selects a variant from the next (nested) variant part, and so on. It is an error if any other variants in those variant parts except the selected ones are made active in the identified variable. It is an error if the identified variable `p↑` is used as a factor, as an actual variable parameter, or as the variable in an assignment statement (although components of `p↑` may occur in those contexts).

`Dispose(q)` destroys the identifying value `q`. It is an error if `q` is `nil`. The value `q` must have been created by the first (short) form of `New`, otherwise it is an *error*.

`Dispose(q,k1,...,kn)` destroys the identifying value `q`. It is an error if `q` is `nil`. The value `q` must have been created by the second (long) form of `New` and the constants `k1,...,kn` must select the same variants that were selected when the value was created, otherwise it is an error.

11.4.3. Data transfer procedures. Let `U` denote a non-packed array variable having type `S1` as its index type and `T` as its component type. Let `P` denote a packed array variable having `S2` as its index type and `T` as its component type. Let `B` and `C` denote the smallest and largest values of type `S2`. Let `K` denote a new variable (not otherwise accessible) possessing type `S1` and let `J` denote a new variable possessing type `S2`. Let `I` be an expression that is compatible with `S1`.

`Pack(U,I,P)` is equivalent to the statement:

```
begin
  K := I;
  for J := B to C do begin
    P[J] := U[K];
    if J <> C then K := succ(K)
  end
end
```

`Unpack(P,U,I)` is equivalent to the statement:

```
begin
  K := I;
  for J := B to C do begin
    U[K] := P[J];
    if J <> C then K := succ(K)
  end;
end
```

In each equivalence, `P` denotes one variable and `U` denotes one variable during all iterations of the `for` statement.

11.5. Predeclared Functions

11.5.1. Arithmetic functions. Let `x` be any real or integer expression. The result type of `abs` and `sqr` is the same as the type of `x`. The result type of the other arithmetic functions is real.

`abs(x)` yields the absolute value of `x`.

`sqr(x)` yields the square of `x`. It is an error if the square does not exist in the implementation.

- `sin(x)` yields the sine of x , where x is in radians.
- `cos(x)` yields the cosine of x , where x is in radians.
- `exp(x)` yields the value of the base of natural logarithms raised to the power x .
- `ln(x)` yields the natural logarithm of x . It is an error if x is less than or equal to zero.
- `sqrt(x)` yields the square root of x . It is an error if x is negative.
- `arctan(x)` yields the principal value, in radians, of the arctangent of x .

11.5.2. Boolean functions. Let i be any integer expression, and let f denote any file variable. The result type of each Boolean function is Boolean.

- `odd(i)` is equivalent to the expression $i \bmod 2 = 1$.
- `eof(f)` is an error if f is undefined; otherwise, `eof(f)` yields true if f is in generation mode or if f is positioned past the last component in its sequence. If the parameter list is omitted, `eof` is applied to the program parameter `Input`.
- `eoln(f)` is an error if f is undefined or if `eof(f)` is true. f must be a textfile. `Eoln(f)` yields true if the current component of the sequence of f is an end-of-line marker. If the parameter list is omitted, `eoln` is applied to the program parameter `Input`.

11.5.3. Transfer functions. Let r denote a real expression. The result type of these functions is Integer.

- `trunc(r)` yields a value such that if $r \geq 0$ then $0 \leq r - \text{trunc}(r) < 1$, and if $r < 0$ then $-1 < r - \text{trunc}(r) \leq 0$. It is an error if no such value exists.
- `round(r)` yields a value such that if $r \geq 0$ then $\text{round}(r) = \text{trunc}(r + 0.5)$, and if $r < 0$ then $\text{round}(r) = \text{trunc}(r - 0.5)$. It is an error if no such value exists.

11.5.4 Ordinal functions. Let i be an integer expression, and let x be any ordinal expression.

- `ord(x)` yields the ordinal number of `x`. `chr(i)` yields the value of type Char having ordinal number `i`. It is an error if no such value exists. If `c` denotes a character value then `chr(ord(c)) = c` is always true.
- `succ(x)` yields the successor of `x`, if any exists, in which case `ord(succ(x)) = ord(x) + 1`. It is an error if no successor exists.
- `pred(x)` yields the predecessor of `x`, if any exists, in which case `ord(pred(x)) = ord(x) - 1`. It is an error if no predecessor exists.

12. Textfile Input and Output

The basis for legible input and output are textfiles (see Section 6.2.4) that are passed as program parameters (see Section 13) to a Pascal program and that in the program's environment may represent some input or output devices such as a keyboard, display, a magnetic tape, or a line printer. In order to facilitate the handling of textfiles, three predeclared procedures (`Readln`, `Writeln`, and `Page`) are introduced, and two predeclared procedures (`Read` and `Write` — see Section 11.4.1) are extended. The textfiles that these procedures apply to need not represent input or output devices, but can also be local files. The actual parameter lists for these procedures do not conform to the usual rules (Section 11.3), allowing among other things for a variable number of parameters. Moreover, the parameters need not be of type Char, but also may be of certain other types in which case the data transfer is accompanied by an implicit data conversion operation. If the first parameter is a file variable, then it is the file to be read or written. Otherwise, the program parameters `Input` and `Output` (see Section 13) are assumed for reading and writing, respectively.

12.1 Read

When using `Read` on a textfile, the following rules apply. Let `f` denote a textfile, and let `v1, ..., vn` denote variables possessing type Char or Integer (or subrange of either) or Real.

- (a) `Read(v1, ..., vn)` is equivalent to `Read(g, v1, ..., vn)`, where `g` denotes the textfile program parameter `Input`.
- (b) `Read(f, v1, ..., vn)` is equivalent to the statement
`begin Read(f, v1); ...; Read(f, vn) end`
 where all occurrences of `f` denote a single variable.
- (c) `Read(f, v)` is an error if `f` is undefined or if `f` is not in inspection mode or if `eof(f)` is true. The effect of `Read(f, v)` depends on the type of `v`.

12.1.1. Char Read. `Read(f, v)`, where `v` denotes a variable possessing a type that is compatible with type `Char`, is equivalent to assignment of a value to `v` followed by `Get(f)`. The value assigned is either the character at the current position of `f` or the value of `f↑`, the choice being implementation-dependent. (These two values are the same except following explicit assignments to `f↑`.) If `eoln(f)` is true before `Read(f, v)`, then the character at the current file position is ' ' (blank).

12.1.2. Integer Read `Read(f, v)`, where `v` denotes a variable possessing a type compatible with type `Integer`, implies the reading from `f` of a sequence of characters which form a *SignedInteger* (see Section 4) and the assignment of the denoted integer value to `v`. Preceding spaces and end-of-line markers are skipped. It is an error if the signed integer is not found.

12.1.3. Real Read. `Read(f, v)`, where `v` denotes a variable possessing the type `Real`, implies the reading from `f` of a sequence of characters which form a *SignedNumber* (see Section 4) and the assignment of the denoted real value to `v`. Preceding spaces and end-of-line markers are skipped. It is an error if the signed number is not found.

12.2 Readln

Let `f` denote a textfile, and let `v1, ..., vn` denote variables of type `Char` or `Integer` (or subrange of either), or `Real`.

`Readln(v1, ..., vn)` is equivalent to `Readln(g, v1, ..., vn)`, and

`Readln` is equivalent to `Readln(g)`, where `g` denotes the textfile program parameter `Input`.

`Readln(f, v1, ..., vn)` is equivalent to the statement

```
begin Read(f, v1, ..., vn); Readln(f) end
```

where all occurrences of f denote a single variable.

`Readln(f)` is equivalent to the statement

```
begin
  while not eoln(f) do et(f);
  Get(f)
end
```

where all occurrences of f denote a single variable.

12.3. Write

When using `Write` on a textfile, the following rules apply. Let f denote a textfile, p, p_1, \dots, p_n denote *WriteParameters*, e denote an expression, and m and n denote integer expressions. The actual parameter list for write must have the following syntax.

WriteParameterList = “(” (*FileVariable* | *WriteParameter*)

{ “,” *WriteParameter* } “)” .

WriteParameter = *Expression* [“:” *IntegerExpression* [“:” *IntegerExpression*]].

(a) `Write(p1, ..., pn)` is equivalent to

`Write(g, p1, ..., pn)`.

where g denotes the textfile program parameter `Output`.

(b) `Write(f, p1, ..., pn)` is equivalent to the statement

```
begin Write(f, p1) . . . ; Write(f, pn) end
where all occurrences of  $f$  denote a single variable.
```

(c) `Write(f, p)` is an error if p is undefined or not in generation mode.

(d) Each write parameter has one of the following forms:

e $e:m$ $e:m:n$

e represents the value to be “written” on f , and m and n are so-called field-width parameters. It is an error if either m or n is less than or equal to zero. The type of e must be either Integer, Real, Char, Boolean, or a string type. The expression n may occur only if e is of type Real (see Section 12.3.3). If n is omitted, a default value is assumed. The default value is implementation-defined if e is of type Integer, Real, or Boolean. The default value for type Char is 1, and the default value for a string type is the number of components in the string.

If the representation of the value of e requires fewer than m characters, then it is preceded by an adequate number of spaces so that exactly m characters are written.

The representation of the value of e depends on the type of e .

12.3.1. Char Write. If e is of type Char, then $\text{Write}(f, e:m)$ is equivalent to the statement

```
begin
  for J := 1 to m - 1 do Write(f, ' ');
  f↑ := e; Put(f)
end
```

where all occurrences of f denote a single variable, and where J denotes a new (not otherwise accessible) integer variable.

12.3.2. Integer Write. If e is of type Integer, then $\text{Write}(f, e:m)$ writes a '-' if $e < 0$, followed by the decimal representation of $\text{abs}(e)$. Preceding spaces are written if needed to write m characters.

12.3.3. Real Write. If e is of type Real, $\text{Write}(f, e:m:n)$ writes a fixed-point representation with n digits after the decimal point; and $\text{Write}(f, e:m)$ writes a floating-point representation. The operator "<<" means "raised to the power."

12.3.3.1. Fixed-point representation. Let w be zero if e is zero, otherwise let w be the absolute value of e rounded and then truncated to n decimal places. Let d be 1 if $w < 1$, otherwise let $10^{**}(d-1) \leq w < 10^d$. d is the number of digits to the left of the decimal point. Let $s = \text{ord}((e < 0) \text{ and } (w \neq 0))$. The representation is negative if $s = 1$. Let $k = (s + d + 1 + n)$; k is the number of non-blank characters written.

If $k < m$, then $m-k$ preceding spaces are written. The fixed-point representation of e consists of k characters:

- (a) '-' if $s = 1$,
- (b) the d decimal digits of the integer part of w ,
- (c) '.',
- (d) the n most significant decimal digits of the fractional part of w .

12.3.3.2. Floating-point representation. The number of digits that are to occur in the scale factor ("E part") of the floating-point representation is implementation-defined; let x denote this number. Let k be the larger of m and $x+6$. The number of significant digits to be written is $k-x-4$, with one digit before the decimal point and d digits after (thus $d = k-x-5$). Let w and s be zero if e is zero. If e is non-

zero, then let s be such that $10^{.0} \times s \leq \text{abs}(e) < 10.0 \times (s+1)$, and let w be $(\text{abs}(e)/10.0)^{.0} + 0.5 * 10.0^{.0} (-d)$. If $w \geq 10.0$ then w and s must be adjusted by $s := s + 1$ and $w := w / 10.0$. Finally, w is truncated to decimal places.

The floating-point representation of e consists of:

- (a) either ' $-$ ' if $(e < 0)$ and $(w \neq 0)$ or else ' $+$ ',
- (b) the most significant decimal digit of w ,
- (c) '.',
- (d) the d next-most-significant decimal digits of w ,
- (e) either ' e ' or ' E ' (the choice being implementation-defined),
- (f) ' $-$ ' if $s < 0$, otherwise '+',
- (g) \times decimal digits of s with leading zeros if needed.

12.3.4. Boolean Write. If e is of type Boolean, then a representation of one of the words `true` or `false` is written by the statement `Write(f,e:m)`, which is equivalent to the statement

```
if e then Write(f,'true':m) else
Write(f,'false':m)
```

with the exception that the case of the letters written is implementation-defined.

12.3.5. String Write. If e possesses a string type of length k , then `Write(f,e:m)` writes $m - k$ spaces if $m > k$, followed by the components of e having successive indices starting at 1 and ascending to either k or m , whichever is less.

12.4. Writeln

Let f denote a textfile, and let p_1, \dots, p_n denote write parameters.

`Writeln(p1, ..., pn)` is equivalent to `Writeln(g,p1, ..., pn)`, and `Writeln` is equivalent to `Writeln(g)`, where g denotes the textfile program parameter `Output`.

`Writeln(f,p1, ..., pn)` is equivalent to the statement

```
begin Write(f,p1, ..., pn); Writeln(f) end
```

where all occurrences of f denote a single variable.

`Writeln(f)` appends an end-of-line marker to the sequence of file f . It is an error if f is undefined or if f is not in generator mode.

12.5. Page

`Page(f)` implies an implementation-defined effect on the textfile `f`, such that any text subsequently written to `f` will appear at the top of a new page when `f` is printed. If `f` is not empty, and the last component of its sequence is not an end-of-line marker, then `Page(f)` performs an implicit `Writeln(f)`. If the parameter list is omitted, the textfile program parameter `Output` is assumed. It is an error if `f` is undefined or if `f` is not in generation mode.

The effect of reading a file variable to which `Page` was previously applied is implementation-dependent.

13. Programs

A Pascal program consists of a program heading and a block.

Program = ProgramHeading ";" Block "." .

ProgramHeading = "program" Identifier [ProgramParameterList] .

ProgramParameterList = "(" IdentifierList ")" .

The identifier following the symbol `program` is the program name; it has no further significance inside the program. Each identifier in the program parameter list is called a program parameter, and denotes an entity that exists outside the program and that, therefore, is called *external*. It is through its program parameters that the program communicates with its environment.

When a program is activated, each program parameter is bound to the external entity that it represents. For those program parameters that are file variables, the binding is implementation-defined; for all other program parameters, the binding is implementation-dependent.

Each program parameter, with the exception of `Input` and `Output`, must be declared in the variable declaration part of the program's block. In the case of `Input` or `Output`, the occurrence of the identifier in the program parameter list has the effect of implicitly declaring the identifier in the program block to be a textfile, and implicitly performing a `Reset(Input)` or `Rewrite(Output)` at the commencement of each activation of the program.

The effect of applying `Reset` or `Rewrite` to either `Input` or `Output` is implementation-defined.

Examples of programs:

```
program CopyReals(F,G) ;
  var F, G: file of Real; R: Real;
begin
  Reset(F); Rewrite(G);
  while not eof(F) do begin
    Read(F,R); Write(G,R)
  end
end { CopyReals } .
```



```
program CopyText(Input,Output);
begin
  while not eof(Input) do begin
    while not eoln(Input) do begin
      Input:=Output'; Put(Output); Get(Input)
    end;
    Readln(Input); Writeln(Output)
  end
end { CopyText } .
```

14. Compliance with ISO 7185

A *program* complies with the ISO Pascal standard [see Reference 11] if it uses only the features of the language that are defined by the standard and it does not rely on any particular interpretation of implementation-dependent features. The program is said to comply at level 0 if it does not make use of conformant array parameters, or at level 1 if it does.

A *processor* is defined by the standard to be “a system or mechanism that accepts a program as input, prepares it for execution, and executes the process so defined with data to produce results.” A processor complies with the standard if it satisfies all of the following conditions.

(a) It accepts all features of the language as they are defined by the standard. It is said to comply at level 0 if it does not accept conformant array parameters, or at level 1 if it does.

(b) It does not require the use of substitute or additional language elements in order to accomplish a feature of the language.

- (c) It is able to recognize violations of the standard that are not specifically called errors, reports such violations to the user, and prevents execution of the program.
- (d) It handles each violation that is specifically called an error in one of the following ways.
 - 1. It states in its documentation that the error is not reported.
 - 2. It reports during program preparation that the error is possible or inevitable; in the presence of such a report, the processor is able to continue further processing and is able to refuse execution, at the user's option.
 - 3. It reports during program preparation that the error occurred; in the presence of such an error, the processor terminates execution. When an error occurs within a statement, the statement does not complete execution.
- (e) It is able to process as an error any use of an extension or of an implementation-dependent feature.
- (f) It is accompanied by a document that contains the following.
 - 1. A definition of all implementation-defined features.
 - 2. A section that describes all errors that are not reported (see d.1, above). If an extension makes use of a condition that is specified by the standard to be an error and thus the error is not reported, then the document must state that the error is not reported.
 - 3. A section that describes all extensions supported by the implementation.

References

1. N. Wirth, “The Programming Language Pascal,” *Acta Informatica*, 1, 35–63, 1971.
2. N. Wirth, “Program Development by Stepwise Refinement,” *Communications of the ACM*, 14, 221–227, April 1971.
3. N. Wirth, *Systematic Programming*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1973.
4. O.J. Dahl, E.W. Dijkstra, C.A.R. Hoare, *Structured Programming*, Academic Press Inc., 1972.
5. C.A.R. Hoare and N. Wirth, “An Axiomatic Definition of the Programming Language Pascal,” *Acta Informatica*, 2, 335–355, 1973.
6. D.E. Knuth, *The Art of Computer Programming, Vol 1, Fundamental Algorithms*, Addison-Wesley, 1968.
7. N. Wirth, “An Assessment of the Programming Language Pascal,” *SIGPLAN Notices*, 10, 23–30, June 1975.

8. N. Wirth, "The Design of a Pascal Compiler," *SOFTWARE — Practice and Experience*, 1, 309–333, 1971.
9. N. Wirth, *Algorithms + Data Structures = Programs*, Prentice Hall, Inc., 1976.
10. D. Barron, "A Perspective on Pascal" and J. Welsh, W. Sneeringer, and C.A.R. Hoare, "Ambiguities and Insecurities in Pascal," *Pascal—The Language and its Implementation*, John Wiley, 1981.
11. International Organization for Standardization, *Specification for Computer Programming Language Pascal*, ISO 7185–1983, 1983.
12. A.H.J. Sale and B. Wichmann "The Pascal Validation Suite," *Pascal News* 16, 5–153, 1979.
13. N. Wirth, "What Can We Do About the Unnecessary Diversity of Notation for Syntactic Definitions?," *Communications of the ACM*, 20, 822–823, November, 1977.
14. B. Wichmann and Z.J. Ciechanowicz, *Pascal Compiler Validation*, John Wiley, 1983.

APPENDIX A

Predeclared Procedures and Functions

Abs (x)

an arithmetic function that computes the real absolute value of a real parameter x or the integer absolute value of an integer parameter x .

ArcTan (x)

an arithmetic function that computes the real arctangent (principal value) in radians of a real or integer parameter x .

Chr (i)

a transfer function that returns the character whose ordinal number is the integer parameter i . $\text{Chr}(i)$ is an error if such a character value does not exist.

Dispose (q)

a dynamic-allocation procedure that deallocates an identified variable q ↑ and destroys the identifying value q . $\text{Dispose}(q)$ is an error if q is nil or undefined. The value q must have been created by the short form of New.

Dispose (q, k1, ..., kn)

a dynamic-allocation procedure that deallocates an identified record variable q ↑ and destroys the identifying value q . $\text{Dispose}(q, k1, \dots, kn)$ is an error if q is nil or undefined. The value q must have been created by the long form of New and $k1, \dots, kn$ must select the same variants selected when q was created.

Eof (f)

a Boolean function that returns true if the file variable f is in generation mode, or if f is positioned past the last component in its sequence and f is in inspection mode. $\text{eof}(f)$ is an error if f is undefined. Otherwise $\text{eof}(f)$ returns false. If f is omitted, program parameter Input is assumed.

Eoln (f)

a Boolean function that returns true if the textfile f , when in inspection mode, is positioned at an end-of-line marker. $\text{eoln}(f)$ is an error if f is undefined or if $\text{eof}(f)$ is true. Otherwise $\text{eoln}(f)$ returns false. If f is omitted, program parameter Input is assumed.

Exp (x)

a arithmetic function that computes the real value of e (the base of natural logarithms) raised to the real or integer parameter x.

Get (f)

a file-handling procedure that causes the position in the sequence f to be advanced to the next component, if any, and f" to take on its value; if no next component exists eof(f) becomes true and f" becomes totally undefined. Get(f) is an error if f is undefined or eof(f) is true. If f is omitted, program parameter Input is assumed.

Ln (x)

a arithmetic function that computes the real natural logarithm (to the base e) of the real or integer parameter x, where x > 0. Ln(x) is an error if x<=0.

New (p)

a dynamic-allocation procedure that allocates a new identified (dynamic) variable p↑ having the domain type of p and creates a new identifying pointer value having the type possessed by p and assigns it to p. If p" is a variant record, New(p) allocates enough space to accommodate all variants.

New (p, c1, ..., cn)

a dynamic-allocation procedure that allocates a new identified (dynamic) variable p↑ having the variant record type of p with tagfield values c1, ..., cn for n nested variant parts, and creates a new identifying pointer value having the type possessed by p and assigns it to p.

Odd (i)

a Boolean function that returns true if the integer parameter i is not evenly divisible by 2; returns false otherwise.

Ord (x)

a transfer function that returns the ordinal number (an integer) of the ordinal parameter x in the set of values defined by the type of x.

Pack (u, i, p)

a data-transfer procedure that packs the contents of the non-packed array u starting at component i into the packed array p.

Page (f)

a file-handling procedure that causes an implementation-defined effect on the textfile parameter f such that the next line subsequently written to f will appear at the top of a new page when f is printed. If f is not empty, and the last component of its sequence is not an end-of-line marker, then Page(f) performs an implicit Writeln(f). If the parameter list is omit

ted, the textfile program parameter `Output` is assumed. `Page(f)` is an error if `f` is undefined or if `f` is not in generation mode.

Pred(x)

a ordinal function that returns the previous ordinal value (predecessor) before the ordinal parameter `x`, if a predecessor exists: `ord(pred(x)) = ord(x) - 1`. `Pred(x)` is an error if `x` is the smallest value of its type.

Put(f)

a file-handling procedure that appends the value of `f''` to the end of the sequence of `f`. `Put(f)` is an error if `f` is undefined or is not in generation mode or if the buffer variable `f''` is undefined. Following `Put(f)`, `f''` is totally undefined.

Read(f,v)

See User Manual, Chapters 9 and 12, and Report Sections 11.4 and 12.1.

Read(f,v1,...,vn)

See User Manual, Chapters 9 and 12, and Report Sections 11.4 and 12.1.

Readln

See User Manual, Chapters 9 and 12, and Report Section 12.2.

Readln(f,v1,...,vn)

See User Manual, Chapters 9 and 12, and Report Section 12.2.

Reset(f)

a file-handling procedure that places `f` in inspection mode and causes the position of `f` to become the first position. If `f` is empty, `eof(f)` becomes true and `f''` becomes totally undefined. Otherwise `eod(f)` becomes false and `f''` becomes the value of the first component of the sequence.

Rewrite(f)

a file-handling procedure that replaces `f` with the empty sequence and places `f` in generation mode. `Eof(f)` becomes true.

Round(r)

a transfer function that computes `trunc(r + 0.5)` for the real parameter `r >= 0.0`, or `trunc(r - 0.5)` for the real parameter `r < 0.0`, if such a value exists in the type Integer. Otherwise it is an error.

Sin(x)

an arithmetic function that computes the real sine of a real or integer parameter `x` where `x` is in radians.

`Sqr(x)`

an arithmetic function that computes the real value $x * x$ if x is real or the integer value $x * x$ if x is integer. It is an error if that value does not exist.

`Sqrt(x)`

an arithmetic function that computes the real, non-negative square root of the integer or real parameter x where $x \geq 0$. `Sqrt(x)` is an error if $x < 0$.

`Succ(x)`

an ordinal function that returns the next ordinal value (successor) after the ordinal parameter x , if such a successor exists: `ord(succ(x)) = ord(x) + 1`. `Succ(x)` is an error if x is the largest value of its type.

`Trunc(r)`

a transfer function that computes the greatest integer less than or equal to the real parameter r for $r \geq 0.0$, or the least integer greater than or equal to the real parameter r , for $r < 0.0$ if such a value exists in the type Integer. Otherwise it is an error.

`Unpack(p, u, i)`

a data-transfer function that unpacks the packed array p into the non-packed array u starting at element i in the non-packed array.

`Write(f, v)`

See User Manual, Chapters 9 and 12, and Report Sections 11.4 and 12.3.

`Write(f, v1, ..., vn)`

See User Manual, Chapters 9 and 12, and Report Sections 11.4 and 12.3.

`Writeln`

See User Manual, Chapters 9 and 12, and Report Section 12.4.

`Writeln(f, e1, ..., en)`

See User Manual, Chapters 9 and 12, and Report Section 12.4.

APPENDIX B

Summary of Operators

Arithmetic

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Operation</i>	<i>Type of Operands</i>	<i>Type of Result</i>
(unary) +	identity	Integer or Real	same as operand
(unary) -	sign inversion	Integer or Real	same as operand
+	addition	Integer or Real	Integer or Real
-	subtraction	Integer or Real	Integer or Real
*	multiplication	Integer or Real	Integer or Real
/	real division	Integer or Real	Real
div	integer division	Integer	Integer
mod	modulus	Integer	Integer

Relational

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Operation</i>	<i>Type of Operands</i>	<i>Type of Result</i>
=	equality	simple, pointer, set, or string	Boolean
<>	inequality	simple, pointer, set, or string	Boolean
<=	less than or equal	simple or string	Boolean
<=	set inclusion	set	Boolean
>=	greater than or equal	simple or string	Boolean
>=	set inclusion	set	Boolean
<	less than	simple or string	Boolean
>	greater than	simple or string	Boolean
in	set membership	ordinal and set	Boolean

Boolean

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Operation</i>	<i>Type of Operands</i>	<i>Type of Result</i>
not	negation	Boolean	Boolean
and	conjunction	Boolean	Boolean
or	disjunction	Boolean	Boolean

Set

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Operation</i>	<i>Type of Operands</i>	<i>Type of Result</i>
+	set union	set of T	set of T
-	set difference	set of T	set of T
*	set intersection	set of T	set of T

Operator Precedence in Expressions

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Classification</i>
not	logical negation
* / div mod	multiplying operators
and	
+ - or	adding operators
= <> > < >= <= in	relational operators

Other Operations

<i>Notation</i>	<i>Operation</i>	<i>Type of Operand</i>	<i>Result Type</i>
Assignment			
:=	assignment	any assignable type	none

Variable Accessing

[.]	array indexing	array	component type
.	field selection	record	field type
↑	identification	pointer	domain type
↑	buffer accessing	file	component type

Construction

[,]	set construction	base type	set
' '	string construction	char	string

APPENDIX C

Tables

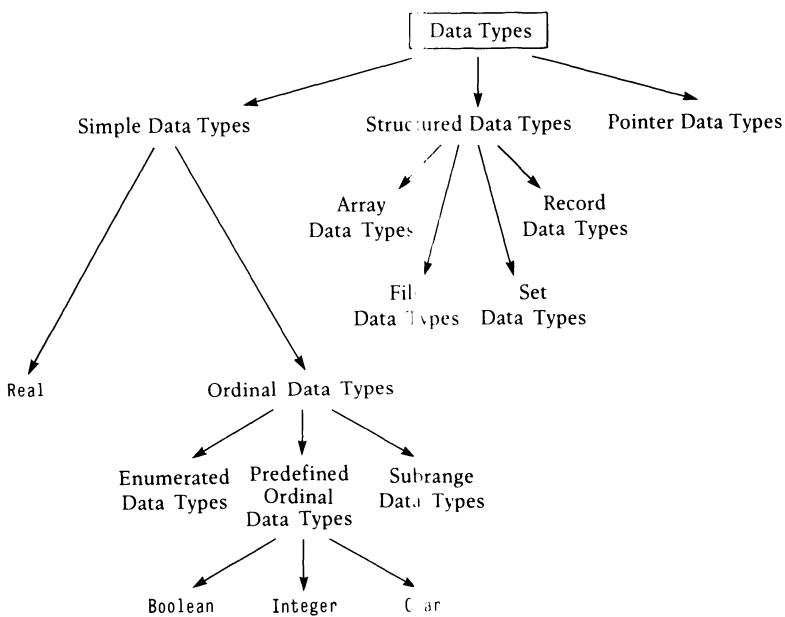


Figure C.a. Complete Type Taxonomy of Data Types

Table of Standard Identifiers**Constants:**

`False, MaxInt, True`

Types:

`Boolean, Char, Integer, Real, Text`

Variables:

`Input, Output`

Functions:

`Abs, ArcTan, Chr, Cos, Eof, Eoln, Exp, Ln, Odd,
Ord, Pred, Round, Sin, Sqr, Sqrt, Succ, Trunc`

Procedures:

`Dispose, Get, New, Pack, Page, Put, Read, Readln,
Reset, Rewrite, Unpack, Write, Writeln`

Alphabetical List:

<code>Abs</code>	<code>False</code>	<code>Pack</code>	<code>Sin</code>
<code>ArcTan</code>	<code>Get</code>	<code>Page</code>	<code>Sqr</code>
<code>Boolean</code>	<code>Input</code>	<code>Pred</code>	<code>Sqrt</code>
<code>Char</code>	<code>Integer</code>	<code>Put</code>	<code>Succ</code>
<code>Chr</code>	<code>Ln</code>	<code>Read</code>	<code>Text</code>
<code>Cos</code>	<code>MaxInt</code>	<code>Readln</code>	<code>True</code>
<code>Dispose</code>	<code>New</code>	<code>Real</code>	<code>Trunc</code>
<code>Eof</code>	<code>Odd</code>	<code>Reset</code>	<code>Unpack</code>
<code>Eoln</code>	<code>Ord</code>	<code>Rewrite</code>	<code>Write</code>
<code>Exp</code>	<code>Output</code>	<code>Round</code>	<code>Writeln</code>

212 Appendix C

Table of Symbols

Special Symbols:

+	-	*	/	=
<	>	<=	>=	<>
.	,	:	;	:=
()	[]	↑

Word Symbols (reserved words)

and	end	nil	set
array	file	not	then
begin	for	of	to
case	function	or	type
const	goto	packed	until
div	if	procedure	var
do	in	program	while
downto	label	record	with
else	mod	repeat	

Alternative representations:

(.	for [
.)	for]
@ or ^	for ↑

Directives

forward

APPENDIX D

Syntax

An Extended Backus–Naur Form (EBNF) specification of the syntax of a programming language consists of a collection of rules or productions collectively called a “grammar” that describe the formation of sentences in the language. Each production consists of a non-terminal symbol and an EBNF expression separated by an equal sign and terminated with a period. The non-terminal symbol is a “meta-identifier” (a syntactic constant denoted by an English word), and the EBNF expression is its definition.

The EBNF expression is composed of zero or more terminal symbols, non-terminal symbols, and other metasymbols summarized in this table:

MetaSymbol	Meaning
=	is defined to be
	alternatively
.	end of production
[X]	0 or 1 instance of X
{ X }	0 or more instances of X
(X Y)	a grouping: either X or Y
“XYZ”	the terminal symbol XYZ
<i>Meta-Identifier</i>	the non-terminal symbol <i>MetaIdentifier</i>

As an example, EBNF can be used to define its own syntax.

<i>Syntax</i>	= { <i>Production</i> } .
<i>Production</i>	= <i>NonTerminal</i> “=” <i>Expression</i> “.” .
<i>Expression</i>	= <i>Term</i> [“ ” <i>Term</i>] .
<i>Term</i>	= <i>Factor</i> { <i>Factor</i> } .
<i>Factor</i>	= <i>NonTerminal</i> <i>Terminal</i> “(” <i>Expression</i> “)” “[” <i>Expression</i> “]” “{” <i>Expression</i> “}” .
<i>Terminal</i>	= ““““ <i>Character</i> { <i>Character</i> } ““““ .
<i>NonTerminal</i>	= <i>Letter</i> { <i>Letter</i> <i>Digit</i> } .

Notes:

1. A terminal symbol (literal) is always enclosed in quotation marks (""); if a " itself is enclosed, it is written twice. Thus in the Pascal EBNF below "[" and "]" represent left and right brackets in a Pascal program, whereas [and] are meta-symbols in an EBNF expression that specify zero or one occurrence of whatever they enclose.
2. Every syntax has a *start symbol*, a meta-identifier from which all the sentences in the language are generated and which is not used in any EBNF expression. The start symbol for the Pascal syntax is *Program*.
3. Several meta-identifiers are "orphans" (e.g. *SignedNumber*) that are used in EBNF and do not appear in this Appendix.

Collected EBNF, Hierarchical

```

1 Program           = ProgramHeading ";" Block .
2 ProgramHeading   = "program" Identifier [ ProgramParameterList ] .
3 ProgramParameterList = "(" IdentifierList ")" .
4
5 _____
6
7 Block            = LabelDeclarationPart
8                 ConstantDefinitionPart
9                 TypeDefinitionPart
10                VariableDeclarationPart
11                ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart
12                StatementPart .
13 LabelDeclarationPart = [ "label" DigitSequence
14                           { "," DigitSequence } ";" ] .
15 ConstantDefinitionPart = [ "const" ConstantDefinition ";" ;
16                           { ConstantDefinition ";" } ] .
17 TypeDefinitionPart = [ "type" TypeDefinition ";" ;
18                           { TypeDefinition ";" } ] .
19 VariableDeclarationPart = [ "var" VariableDeclaration ";" ;
20                           { VariableDeclaration ";" } ] .
21 ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart = { ( ProcedureDeclaration |
22                                         FunctionDeclaration ) ";" } .
23 StatementPart     = CompoundStatement .
24
25
26 ConstantDefinition = Identifier "=" Constant .
27 TypeDefinition     = Identifier "=" Type .
28 VariableDeclaration = IdentifierList ":" Type .
29 ProcedureDeclaration = ProcedureHeading ";" Block |
30                           ProcedureHeading ";" Directive |
31                           ProcedureIdentification ";" Block .
32 FunctionDeclaration = FunctionHeading ";" Block |
33                           FunctionHeading ";" Directive |
34                           FunctionIdentification ";" Block .
35
36
37

```

216 Appendix D

38 *ProcedureHeading* = “procedure” *Identifier* [*FormalParameterList*].
39 *ProcedureIdentification* = “procedure” *ProcedureIdentifier*.
40 *FunctionHeading* = “function” *Identifier* [*FormalParameterList*]
41 “;” *ResultType*.
42 *FunctionIdentification* = “function” *FunctionIdentifier*.
43 *FormalParameterList* = (“*FormalParameterSection*
44 { “;” *FormalParameterSection* } “”).
45 *FormalParameterSection* = *ValueParameterSpecification* |
46 *VariableParameterSpecification* |
47 *ProceduralParameterSpecification* |
48 *FunctionalParameterSpecification*.
49
50 _____
51
52 *ValueParameterSpecification* =
53 *IdentifierList* “;” (*TypeIdentifier* |
54 *ConformantArraySchema*).
55 *VariableParameterSpecification* =
56 “var” *IdentifierList* “;” (*TypeIdentifier* |
57 *ConformantArraySchema*).
58 *ProceduralParameterSpecification* =
59 *ProcedureHeading*.
60 *FunctionalParameterSpecification* =
61 *FunctionHeading*.
62 *ConformantArraySchema* = *PackedConformantArraySchema* |
63 *UnpackedConformantArraySchema*.
64 *PackedConformantArraySchema* =
65 “packed” “array” “[” *IndexTypeSpecification* “]”
66 “of” *TypeIdentifier*.
67 *UnpackedConformantArraySchema* =
68 “array” “[” *IndexTypeSpecification* { “;”
69 *IndexTypeSpecification* } “]” “of”
70 (*TypeIdentifier* | *ConformantArraySchema*).
71 *IndexTypeSpecification* = *Identifier* “..” *Identifier* “;”
72 *OrdinalTypeIdentifier*.
73 _____
74
75 *CompoundStatement* = “begin”
76 *StatementSequence*
77 “end”.
78 *StatementSequence* = *Statement* { “;” *Statement* } .
79 *Statement* = [*Label* “:”]
80 (*SimpleStatement* | *StructuredStatement*) .
81 *SimpleStatement* = *EmptyStatement* | *AssignmentStatement*
82 | *ProcedureStatement* | *GotoStatement* .

83 StructuredStatement	=	<i>CompoundStatement</i> <i>ConditionalStatement</i> <i>RepetitiveStatement</i> <i>WithStatement</i> .
84		
85 ConditionalStatement	=	<i>IfStatement</i> <i>CaseStatement</i> .
86 RepetitiveStatement	=	<i>WhileStatement</i> <i>RepeatStatement</i> <i>ForStatement</i> .
87		
88		
89 EmptyStatement	=	.
90 AssignmentStatement	=	(<i>Variable</i> <i>FunctionIdentifier</i>) “:=” <i>Expression</i> .
91		
92 ProcedureStatement	=	<i>ProcedureIdentifier</i> [<i>ActualParameterList</i> <i>WriteParameterList</i>] .
93		
94 GotoStatement	=	“goto” <i>Label</i> .
95 IfStatement	=	“if” <i>BooleanExpression</i> “then” <i>Statement</i> [“else” <i>Statement</i>] .
96		
97 CaseStatement	=	“case” <i>CaseIndex</i> “of” <i>Case</i> { “;” <i>Case</i> } [“;”] “end” .
98		
99		
100 RepeatStatement	=	“repeat” <i>StatementSequence</i> “until” <i>BooleanExpression</i> .
101		
102		
103 WhileStatement	=	“while” <i>BooleanExpression</i> “do” <i>Statement</i> .
104		
105 ForStatement	=	“for” <i>ControlVariable</i> “:=” <i>InitialValue</i> (“to” “downto”) <i>FinalValue</i> “do” <i>Statement</i> .
106		
107 WithStatement	=	“with” <i>RecordVariableList</i> “do” <i>Statement</i> .
108		
109 RecordVariableList	=	<i>RecordVariable</i> { “;” <i>RecordVariable</i> } .
110 CaseIndex	=	<i>OrdinalExpression</i> .
111 Case	=	<i>Constant</i> { “;” <i>Constant</i> } “:” <i>Statement</i> .
112 ControlVariable	=	<i>VariableIdentifier</i> .
113 InitialValue	=	<i>OrdinalExpression</i> .
114 FinalValue	=	<i>OrdinalExpression</i> .
115		
116		
117		
118 Type	=	<i>SimpleType</i> <i>StructuredType</i> <i>PointerType</i> .
119 SimpleType	=	<i>OrdinalType</i> <i>RealTypeIdentifier</i> .
120 StructuredType	=	[“packed”] <i>UnpackedStructuredType</i> <i>StructuredTypeIdentifier</i> .
121		
122 PointerType	=	“↑” <i>DomainType</i> <i>PointerTypeIdentifier</i> .
123 OrdinalType	=	<i>EnumeratedType</i> <i>SubrangeType</i> <i>OrdinalTypeIdentifier</i> .
124		
125 UnpackedStructuredType	=	<i>ArrayType</i> <i>RecordType</i> <i>SetType</i> <i>FileType</i> .
126		
127 DomainType	=	<i>TypeIdentifier</i> .
128 EnumeratedType	=	(“IdentifierList”) .

218 Appendix D

129 <i>SubrangeType</i>	=	<i>ConstInt</i> “..” <i>Constant</i> .
130		
131 <i>ArrayType</i>	=	“arr[” “[” <i>IndexType</i> { “,” <i>IndexType</i> } “]” “of” <i>ComponentType</i> .
132		
133 <i>RecordType</i>	=	“recdef” <i>FieldList</i> “end”
134		
135		
136 <i>SetType</i>	=	“set” “[” <i>BaseType</i> .
137 <i>FileType</i>	=	“file” “[” “of” <i>ComponentType</i> .
138 <i>IndexType</i>	=	<i>OrdinalType</i> .
139 <i>ComponentType</i>	=	<i>Type</i> .
140 <i>BaseType</i>	=	<i>OrdinalType</i> .
141 <i>ResultType</i>	=	<i>OrdinalTypeIdentifier</i> <i>RealTypeIdentifier</i> <i>PointerTypeIdentifier</i> .
142		
143 <i>FieldList</i>	=	[(<i>FixedPart</i> [“;” <i>VariantPart</i>] <i>VariantPart</i>) [“.”] .
144		
145 <i>FixedPart</i>	=	<i>RecordSection</i> { “;” <i>RecordSection</i> } .
146 <i>VariantPart</i>	=	“case” <i>VariantSelector</i> “of” <i>Variant</i> { “;” <i>Variant</i> } .
147		
148		
149 <i>RecordSection</i>	=	<i>IdentifierList</i> “;” <i>Type</i> .
150 <i>VariantSelector</i>	=	[<i>TagField</i> “;”] <i>TagType</i> .
151 <i>Variant</i>	=	<i>Constant</i> { “;” <i>Constant</i> } “;” (“ <i>FieldList</i> ”) .
152 <i>TagType</i>	=	<i>OrdinalTypeIdentifier</i> .
153 <i>TagField</i>	=	<i>Identifier</i> .
154		
155		
156		
157 <i>Constant</i>	=	[<i>Sign</i> (<i>UnsignedNumber</i> <i>ConstantIdentifier</i>) <i>CharacterString</i> .
158		
159		
160		
161		
162 <i>Expression</i>	=	<i>SimpleExpression</i> [<i>RelationalOperator</i> <i>SimpleExpression</i>] .
163		
164 <i>SimpleExpression</i>	=	[<i>Sign</i> <i>Term</i> { <i>AddingOperator</i> <i>Term</i> } .
165 <i>Term</i>	=	<i>Factor</i> <i>MultiplyingOperator</i> <i>Factor</i> } .
166 <i>Factor</i>	=	<i>UnsignedConstant</i> <i>BoundIdentifier</i> <i>Variable</i> <i>ObjectConstructor</i> <i>FunctionDesignator</i> “::” <i>Factor</i> (“ <i>Expression</i> ”).
167		
168		
169 <i>RelationalOperator</i>	=	“=” “>” “<” “<=” “>” “>=” “in” .
170 <i>AddingOperator</i>	=	“+” “-” “or” .
171 <i>MultiplyingOperator</i>	=	“*” “/” “div” “mod” “and” .
172 <i>UnsignedConstant</i>	=	<i>UnsignedNumber</i> <i>CharacterString</i> <i>ConstantIdentifier</i> “nil” .
173		
174 <i>FunctionDesignator</i>	=	<i>FunctionIdentifier</i> [<i>ActualParameterList</i>] .

175	
176 <i>Variable</i>	= <i>EntireVariable</i> <i>ComponentVariable</i> <i>IdentifiedVariable</i> <i>BufferVariable</i> .
177	= <i>VariableIdentifier</i> .
178 <i>EntireVariable</i>	= <i>IndexedVariable</i> <i>FieldDesignator</i> .
179 <i>ComponentVariable</i>	= <i>PointerVariable</i> “ \uparrow ” .
180 <i>IdentifiedVariable</i>	= <i>FileVariable</i> “ \uparrow ” .
181 <i>BufferVariable</i>	= <i>ArrayVariable</i> “[“ <i>Index</i> { “,” <i>Index</i> } ”]” .
182 <i>IndexedVariable</i>	= [<i>RecordVariable</i> “.”] <i>FieldIdentifier</i> .
183 <i>FieldDesignator</i>	= “[” <i>ElementDescription</i> { “,” <i>ElementDescription</i> }] ”]” .
184 <i>SetConstructor</i>	= <i>OrdinalExpression</i> [“..” <i>OrdinalExpression</i>] .
185	= “(“ <i>ActualParameter</i> { “,” <i>ActualParameter</i> } “)” .
186 <i>ElementDescription</i>	= <i>Expression</i> <i>Variable</i> <i>ProcedureIdentifier</i> <i>FunctionIdentifier</i> .
187 <i>ActualParameterList</i>	= “(“ (<i>FileVariable</i> <i>WriteParameter</i>) { “,” <i>WriteParameter</i> } “)” .
188	= <i>Expression</i> [“:” <i>IntegerExpression</i> [“..” <i>IntegerExpression</i>]] .
189 <i>ActualParameter</i>	= <i>Variable</i> .
190	= <i>Variable</i> .
191 <i>WriteParameterList</i>	= <i>Variable</i> .
192	= <i>Variable</i> .
193 <i>WriteParameter</i>	= <i>Variable</i> .
194	= <i>Variable</i> .
195 <i>ArrayVariable</i>	= <i>OrdinalExpression</i> .
196 <i>RecordVariable</i>	= <i>OrdinalExpression</i> .
197 <i>FileVariable</i>	= <i>OrdinalExpression</i> .
198 <i>PointerVariable</i>	= <i>OrdinalExpression</i> .
199 <i>IntegerExpression</i>	= <i>OrdinalExpression</i> .
200 <i>BooleanExpression</i>	= <i>OrdinalExpression</i> .
201 <i>Index</i>	= <i>OrdinalExpression</i> .
202 <i>OrdinalExpression</i>	= <i>Expression</i> .
203	
204	
205 <i>PointerTypeIdentifier</i>	= <i>TypeIdentifier</i> .
206 <i>StructuredTypeIdentifier</i>	= <i>TypeIdentifier</i> .
207 <i>OrdinalTypeIdentifier</i>	= <i>TypeIdentifier</i> .
208 <i>RealTypeIdentifier</i>	= <i>TypeIdentifier</i> .
209 <i>ConstantIdentifier</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> .
210 <i>TypeIdentifier</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> .
211 <i>VariableIdentifier</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> .
212 <i>FieldIdentifier</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> .
213 <i>ProcedureIdentifier</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> .
214 <i>FunctionIdentifier</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> .
215 <i>BoundIdentifier</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> .
216	
217	
218 <i>UnsignedNumber</i>	= <i>UnsignedInteger</i> <i>UnsignedReal</i> .
219 <i>IdentifierList</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> { “,” <i>Identifier</i> } .

220 Appendix D

220	=	<i>Letter</i> { <i>Letter</i> <i>Digit</i> } .
221	=	<i>Letter</i> { <i>Letter</i> <i>Digit</i> } .
222	=	<i>DigitSequence</i> .
223 <i>Identifier</i>	=	<i>DigitSequence</i> .
224 <i>Directive</i>	=	<i>DigitSequence</i> “.” <i>DigitSequence</i> [“e” <i>ScaleFactor</i>] <i>DigitSequence</i> “e” <i>ScaleFactor</i> .
225 <i>Label</i>	=	[<i>Sign</i> <i>DigitSequence</i> .
226 <i>UnsignedInteger</i>	=	“+” “-” .
227 <i>UnsignedReal</i>	=	“.” <i>StringElement</i> { <i>StringElement</i> } “.” .
228	=	<i>Digit</i> <i>Digit</i> } .
229 <i>ScaleFactor</i>	=	“a” “b” “c” “d” “e” “f” “g”
230 <i>Sign</i>	=	“h” “i” “j” “k” “l” “m” “n”
231 <i>CharacterString</i>	=	“o” “p” “q” “r” “s” “t” “u”
232 <i>DigitSequence</i>	=	“v” “w” “x” “y” “z” .
233	=	“0” “1” “2” “3” “4” “5” “6”
234 <i>Letter</i>	=	“7” “8” “9” .
235	=	“.” “AnyCharacterExceptApostrophe” .
236		
237		
238 <i>Digit</i>		
239		
240 <i>StringElement</i>		

Cross Reference of EBNF

Indexed to Report

Report	Meta-Identifier	EBNF Cross Reference
11.3.2.	<i>ActualParameter</i>	187 188 189
11.3.2.	<i>ActualParameterList</i>	92 174 187
8.	<i>AddingOperator</i>	164 170
4.	<i>AnyCharacterExceptApostrophe</i>	240
6.2.1.	<i>ArrayType</i>	125 131
7.2.1.	<i>ArrayVariable</i>	182 195
9.1.1.	<i>AssignmentStatement</i>	81 90
6.2.3.	<i>BaseType</i>	136 140
10.1.	<i>Block</i>	1 7 29 31 32 34
8.	<i>BooleanExpression</i>	95 102 103 200
11.3.1.1.	<i>BoundIdentifier</i>	166 215
7.4.	<i>BufferVariable</i>	177 181
9.2.2.2.	<i>Case</i>	98 98 111
9.2.2.2.	<i>CaseIndex</i>	97 110
9.2.2.2.	<i>CaseStatement</i>	85 97
4.	<i>CharacterString</i>	158 172 231
6.2.1.	<i>ComponentType</i>	132 137 139
7.2.	<i>ComponentVariable</i>	176 179
9.2.1.	<i>CompoundStatement</i>	23 75 83
9.2.2.	<i>ConditionalStatement</i>	83 85
11.3.1.1.	<i>ConformantArraySchema</i>	54 57 62 70
5.	<i>Constant</i>	26 111 111 129 129 151 151 157
5.	<i>ConstantDefinition</i>	15 16 26
5.	<i>ConstantDefinitionPart</i>	8 15
5.	<i>ConstantIdentifier</i>	157 173 209
9.2.3.3.	<i>ControlVariable</i>	105 112
4.	<i>Digit</i>	223 224 232 232 238
4.	<i>DigitSequence</i>	13 14 225 226 227 228 229 232
4.	<i>Directive</i>	30 33 224
6.3.	<i>DomainType</i>	122 127
8.	<i>ElementDescription</i>	184 185 186
9.1.	<i>EmptyStatement</i>	81 89
7.1.	<i>EntireVariable</i>	176 178
6.1.1.	<i>EnumeratedType</i>	123 128
8.	<i>Expression</i>	91 162 168 189 193 201
8.	<i>Factor</i>	165 165 166 168
7.2.2.	<i>FieldDesignator</i>	179 183
6.2.2.	<i>FieldIdentifier</i>	183 212
6.2.2.	<i>FieldList</i>	134 143 151

222 Appendix D

6.2.4.	<i>FileType</i>	126 137
7.4.	<i>FileVariable</i>	181 191 197
9.2.3.3.	<i>FinalValue</i>	106 114
6.2.2.	<i>FixedPart</i>	143 145
9.2.3.3.	<i>ForStatement</i>	87 105
11.3.1.	<i>FormalParameterList</i>	38 40 43
11.3.1.	<i>FormalParameterSection</i>	43 44 45
11.2.	<i>FunctionDeclaration</i>	22 32
8.	<i>FunctionDesignator</i>	167 174
11.2.	<i>FunctionHeading</i>	32 33 40 61
11.2.	<i>FunctionIdentification</i>	34 42
11.2.	<i>FunctionIdentifier</i>	42 90 174 190 214
11.3.1.2.	<i>FunctionParameterSpecification</i>	48 60
9.1.3.	<i>GotoStatement</i>	82 94
7.3.	<i>IdentifiedVariable</i>	177 180
4.	<i>Identifier</i>	2 26 27 38 40 71 71 153 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 219 219 223
6.1.1.	<i>IdentifierList</i>	3 28 53 56 128 149 219
9.2.2.1.	<i>IfStatement</i>	85 95
7.2.1.	<i>Index</i>	182 182 201
6.2.1.	<i>IndexType</i>	131 131 138
11.3.1.1.	<i>IndexTypeSpecification</i>	65 68 69 71
7.2.1.	<i>IndexedVariable</i>	179 182
9.2.3.3.	<i>InitialValue</i>	105 113
8.	<i>IntegerExpression</i>	193 194 199
10.1.1.	<i>Label</i>	79 94 225
10.1.1.	<i>LabelDeclarationPart</i>	7 13
4.	<i>Letter</i>	223 223 224 224 234
8.	<i>MultiplyingOperator</i>	165 171
8.	<i>OrdinalExpression</i>	110 113 114 186 186 199 200 201 202
6.1.	<i>OrdinalType</i>	119 123 138 140
6.1.	<i>OrdinalTypeIdentifier</i>	72 124 141 152 207
11.3.1.1.	<i>PackedConformantArraySchema</i>	62 64
6.3.	<i>PointerType</i>	118 122
6.3.	<i>PointerTypeIdentifier</i>	122 142 205
7.3.	<i>PointerVariable</i>	180 198
11.3.1.2.	<i>ProceduralParameterSpecification</i>	47 58
11.	<i>ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart</i>	11 21
11.1.	<i>ProcedureDeclaration</i>	21 29
11.1.	<i>ProcedureHeading</i>	29 30 38 59
11.1.	<i>ProcedureIdentification</i>	31 39
11.1.	<i>ProcedureIdentifier</i>	39 92 189 213
9.1.2.	<i>ProcedureStatement</i>	82 92
13.	<i>Program</i>	1

13.	<i>ProgramHeading</i>	1 2
13.	<i>ProgramParameterList</i>	2 3
6.1.	<i>RealTypeIdentifier</i>	119 141 208
6.2.2.	<i>RecordSection</i>	145 145 149
6.2.2.	<i>RecordType</i>	125 133
7.2.2.	<i>RecordVariable</i>	109 109 183 196
9.2.4.	<i>RecordVariableList</i>	107 109
8.	<i>RelationalOperator</i>	162 169
9.2.3.2.	<i>RepeatStatement</i>	86 100
9.2.3.	<i>RepetitiveStatement</i>	84 86
11.2	<i>ResultType</i>	41 141
4.	<i>ScaleFactor</i>	228 228 229
8.	<i>SetConstructor</i>	167 184
6.2.3.	<i>SetType</i>	125 136
4.	<i>Sign</i>	157 164 229 230
8.	<i>SimpleExpression</i>	162 163 164
9.1.	<i>SimpleStatement</i>	80 81
6.1.	<i>SimpleType</i>	118 119
9.	<i>Statement</i>	78 78 79 95 96 104 106 108 111
9.	<i>StatementPart</i>	12 23
9.2.	<i>StatementSequence</i>	76 78 101
4.	<i>StringElement</i>	231 231 240
9.2.	<i>StructuredStatement</i>	80 83
6.2	<i>StructuredType</i>	118 120
6.2.	<i>StructuredTypeIdentifier</i>	121 206
6.1.3.	<i>SubrangeType</i>	123 129
6.2.2.	<i>TagField</i>	150 153
8.	<i>Term</i>	164 164 165
6.	<i>Type</i>	27 28 118 139 149
6.	<i>TypeDefinition</i>	17 18 27
6.	<i>TypeDefinitionPart</i>	9 17
6.	<i>TypeIdentifier</i>	53 56 66 70 127 205 206 207 208 210
11.3.1.1.	<i>UnpackedConformantArraySchema</i>	63 67
6.2.	<i>UnpackedStructuredType</i>	120 125
8.	<i>UnsignedConstant</i>	166 172
4.	<i>UnsignedInteger</i>	218 226
4.	<i>UnsignedNumber</i>	157 172 218
4.	<i>UnsignedReal</i>	218 227
11.2.1.1.	<i>ValueParameterSpecification</i>	45 52
7.	<i>Variable</i>	90 166 176 189 195 196 197 198
7.	<i>VariableDeclaration</i>	19 20 28
7.	<i>VariableDeclarationPart</i>	10 19
7.	<i>VariableIdentifier</i>	112 178 211

224 Appendix D

11.3.1.1.	<i>VariableParameterSpecification</i>	46 55
6.2.2.	<i>Variant</i>	147 148 151
6.2.2.	<i>VariantPart</i>	143 143 146
6.2.2.	<i>VariantSelector</i>	146 150
9.2.3.1.	<i>WhileStatement</i>	86 103
9.2.4.	<i>WithStatement</i>	84 107
12.3.	<i>WriteParameter</i>	191 192 193
12.3.	<i>WriteParameterList</i>	93 191

Word Symbol	EBNF Cross Reference
and	171
array	65 68 131
begin	75
case	97 146
const	15
div	171
do	103 106 107
downto	106
else	96
end	77 99 135
file	137
for	105
function	40 42
goto	94
if	94
in	169
label	13
mod	171
nil	173
not	168
of	66 69 97 132 136 137 146
or	170
packed	65 120
procedure	38 39
program	2
record	133
repeat	100
set	136
then	95
to	106
type	17
until	102
var	19 56
while	103
with	107

Collected EBNF, Alphabetical

<i>ActualParameter</i>	= Expression Variable ProcedureIdentifier FunctionIdentifier .
<i>ActualParameterList</i>	= "(" ActualParameter { "," ActualParameter } ")" .
<i>AddingOperator</i>	= "+" "-" "or" .
<i>ArrayType</i>	= "array" "[" IndexType { "," IndexType } "] " of " ComponentType .
<i>ArrayVariable</i>	= Variable .
<i>AssignmentStatement</i>	= (Variable FunctionIdentifier) ":" Expression .
<i>BaseType</i>	= OrdinalType .
<i>Block</i>	= LabelDeclarationPart ConstantDefinitionPart TypeDefinitionPart VariableDeclarationPart StatementPart .
<i>BooleanExpression</i>	= OrdinalExpression .
<i>BoundIdentifier</i>	= Identifier .
<i>BufferVariable</i>	= FileVariable "↑" .
<i>Case</i>	= Constant { ";" Constant } ":" Statement .
<i>CaseIndex</i>	= OrdinalExpression .
<i>CaseStatement</i>	= "case" CaseIndex "of" Case { ";" Case } [";"] "end" .
<i>CharacterString</i>	= "!" StringElement { StringElement } "!" .
<i>ComponentType</i>	= Type .
<i>ComponentVariable</i>	= IndexedVariable FieldDesignator .
<i>CompoundStatement</i>	= "begin" StatementSequence "end" .
<i>ConditionalStatement</i>	= IfStatement CaseStatement .
<i>ConformantArraySchema</i>	= PackedConformantArraySchema UnpackedConformantArraySchema .
<i>Constant</i>	= [Sign](UnsignedNumber ConstantIdentifier) / CharacterString .
<i>ConstantDefinition</i>	= Identifier "=" Constant .
<i>ConstantDefinitionPart</i>	= ["const" ConstantDefinition ";"] { ConstantDefinition ";" }] .

<i>ConstantIdentifier</i>	= Identifier .
<i>ControlVariable</i>	= VariableIdentifier .
<i>Digit</i>	= "0" "1" "2" "3" "4" "5" "6" "7" "8" "9" .
<i>DigitSequence</i>	= Digit Digit .
<i>Directive</i>	= Letter { Letter Digit } .
<i>DomainType</i>	= TypeIdentifier .
<i>ElementDescription</i>	= OrdinalExpression [.. OrdinalExpression] .
<i>EmptyStatement</i>	= .
<i>EntireVariable</i>	= VariableIdentifier .
<i>EnumeratedType</i>	= (" IdentifierList ") .
<i>Expression</i>	= SimpleExpression [RelationalOperator SimpleExpression] .
<i>Factor</i>	= UnsignedConstant BoundIdentifier Variable SetConstructor FunctionDesignator "not" Factor (" Expression ") .
<i>FieldDesignator</i>	= [RecordVariable "."] FieldIdentifier .
<i>FieldIdentifier</i>	= Identifier .
<i>FieldList</i>	= [(FieldPart [";" VariantPart] VariantPart) [";"]] .
<i>FileType</i>	= "file" ":" ComponentType .
<i>FileVariable</i>	= Variable .
<i>FinalValue</i>	= OrdinalExpression .
<i>FixedPart</i>	= RecordSection { ";" RecordSection } .
<i>ForStatement</i>	= "for" ControlVariable ":" InitialValue ("to" "downto") FinalValue "do" Statement .
<i>FormalParameterList</i>	= (" FormalParameterSection { ";" FormalParameterSection } ") .
<i>FormalParameterSection</i>	= ValueParameterSpecification VariableParameterSpecification ProceduralParameterSpecification FunctionalParameterSpecification .
<i>FunctionDeclaration</i>	= FunctionHeading ";" Block FunctionHeading ";" Directive FunctionIdentification ";" Block .
<i>FunctionDesignator</i>	= FunctionIdentifier [ActualParameterList] .
<i>FunctionHeading</i>	= "func" ":" Identifier [FormalParameterList] ":" ResultType .
<i>FunctionIdentification</i>	= "func" ":" FunctionIdentifier .
<i>FunctionIdentifier</i>	= Identifier .
<i>FunctionalParameterSpecification</i>	= FunctionHeading .
<i>GotoStatement</i>	= "goto" Label .
<i>IdentifiedVariable</i>	= PointerVariable "↑" .

<i>Identifier</i>	= <i>Letter</i> { <i>Letter</i> <i>Digit</i> } .
<i>IdentifierList</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> { ; <i>Identifier</i> } .
<i>IfStatement</i>	= “if” <i>BooleanExpression</i> “then” <i>Statement</i> [“else” <i>Statement</i>] .
<i>Index</i>	= <i>OrdinalExpression</i> .
<i>IndexType</i>	= <i>OrdinalType</i> .
<i>IndexTypeSpecification</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> .. <i>Identifier</i> : <i>OrdinalTypeIdentifier</i> .
<i>IndexedVariable</i>	= <i>ArrayVariable</i> [” <i>Index</i> { ; <i>Index</i> } ”] .
<i>InitialValue</i>	= <i>OrdinalExpression</i> .
<i>IntegerExpression</i>	= <i>OrdinalExpression</i> .
<i>Label</i>	= <i>DigitSequence</i> .
<i>LabelDeclarationPart</i>	= [“label” <i>DigitSequence</i> { ; <i>DigitSequence</i> } ;].
<i>Letter</i>	= “a” “b” “c” “d” “e” “f” “g” “h” “i” “j” “k” “l” “m” “n” “o” “p” “q” “r” “s” “t” “u” “v” “w” “x” “y” “z” .
<i>MultiplyingOperator</i>	= “*” “/” “div” “mod” “and” .
<i>OrdinalExpression</i>	= <i>Expression</i> .
<i>OrdinalType</i>	= <i>EnumeratedType</i> <i>SubrangeType</i> <i>OrdinalTypeIdentifier</i> .
<i>OrdinalTypeIdentifier</i>	= <i>TypeIdentifier</i> .
<i>PackedConformantArraySchema</i>	= “packed” “array” [” <i>IndexTypeSpecification</i> ”] “of” <i>TypeIdentifier</i> .
<i>PointerType</i>	= “^” <i>DomainType</i> <i>PointerTypeIdentifier</i> .
<i>PointerTypeIdentifier</i>	= <i>TypeIdentifier</i> .
<i>PointerVariable</i>	= <i>Variable</i> .
<i>ProceduralParameterSpecification</i>	= <i>ProcedureHeading</i> .
<i>ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart</i>	= { (<i>ProcedureDeclaration</i> <i>FunctionDeclaration</i>) ; } .
<i>ProcedureDeclaration</i>	= <i>ProcedureHeading</i> ; <i>Block</i> <i>ProcedureHeading</i> ; <i>Directive</i> <i>ProcedureIdentification</i> ; <i>Block</i> .
<i>ProcedureHeading</i>	= “procedure” <i>Identifier</i> [<i>FormalParameterList</i>] .
<i>ProcedureIdentification</i>	= “procedure” <i>ProcedureIdentifier</i> .
<i>ProcedureIdentifier</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> .
<i>ProcedureStatement</i>	= <i>ProcedureIdentifier</i> [<i>ActualParameterList</i> / <i>WriteParameterList</i>] .
<i>Program</i>	= <i>ProgramHeading</i> ; <i>Block</i> ; .
<i>ProgramHeading</i>	= “program” <i>Identifier</i> [<i>ProgramParameterList</i>] .
<i>ProgramParameterList</i>	= “(” <i>IdentifierList</i> “)” .
<i>RealTypeIdentifier</i>	= <i>TypeIdentifier</i> .
<i>RecordSection</i>	= <i>IdentifierList</i> ; <i>Type</i> .

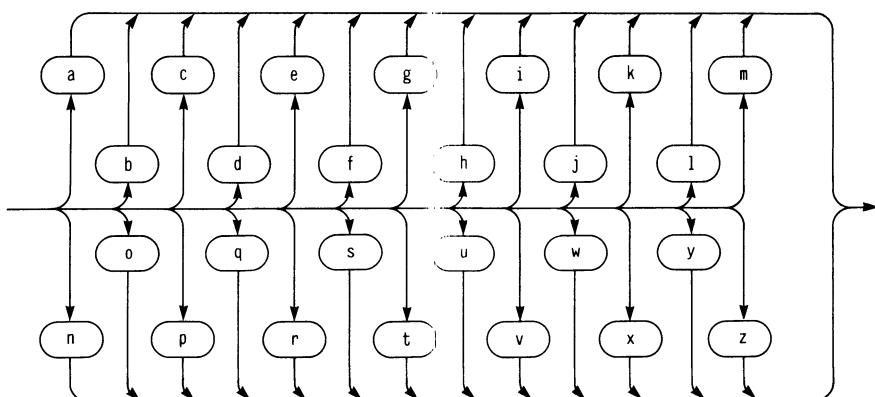
<i>RecordType</i>	= “rec” <i>FieldList</i> “end”.
<i>RecordVariable</i>	= <i>Variable</i> .
<i>RecordVariableList</i>	= <i>RecordVariable</i> { “,” <i>RecordVariable</i> } .
<i>RelationalOperator</i>	= “=” “<>” “<” “≤” “>” “≥” “in”.
<i>RepeatStatement</i>	= “repeat” <i>StatementSequence</i> “until” <i>BooleanExpression</i> .
<i>RepetitiveStatement</i>	= <i>WhileStatement</i> <i>RepeatStatement</i> <i>ForStatement</i> .
<i>ResultType</i>	= <i>OrdinalTypeIdentifier</i> <i>RealTypeIdentifier</i> <i>PointerTypeIdentifier</i> .
<i>ScaleFactor</i>	= [<i>Sign</i> <i>DigitSequence</i> .
<i>SetConstructor</i>	= “[” [<i>ElementDescription</i> { “,” <i>ElementDescription</i> }] “]” .
<i>SetType</i>	= “set” “of” <i>BaseType</i> .
<i>Sign</i>	= “+” “-”.
<i>SimpleExpression</i>	= [<i>Sign</i>] <i>Term</i> { <i>AddingOperator</i> <i>Term</i> } .
<i>SimpleStatement</i>	= <i>EmptyStatement</i> <i>AssignmentStatement</i> <i>ProcedureStatement</i> <i>GotoStatement</i> .
<i>SimpleType</i>	= <i>OrdinalType</i> <i>RealTypeIdentifier</i> .
<i>Statement</i>	= [<i>Label</i> “:”] (<i>SimpleStatement</i> <i>StructuredStatement</i>) .
<i>StatementPart</i>	= <i>CompoundStatement</i> .
<i>StatementSequence</i>	= <i>Statement</i> { “;” <i>Statement</i> } .
<i>StringElement</i>	= “’” <i>AnyCharacterExceptApostrophe</i> .
<i>StructuredStatement</i>	= <i>CompoundStatement</i> <i>ConditionalStatement</i> <i>RepetitiveStatement</i> <i>WithStatement</i> .
<i>StructuredType</i>	= [“packed” <i>UnpackedStructuredType</i> <i>StructuredTypeIdentifier</i> .
<i>StructuredTypeIdentifier</i>	= <i>TypeIdentifier</i> .
<i>SubrangeType</i>	= <i>Constant</i> .. <i>Constant</i> .
<i>TagField</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> .
<i>TagType</i>	= <i>OrdinalTypeIdentifier</i> .
<i>Term</i>	= <i>Factor</i> { <i>MultiplyingOperator</i> <i>Factor</i> } .
<i>Type</i>	= <i>SimpleType</i> <i>StructuredType</i> <i>PointerType</i> .
<i>TypeDefinition</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> “=” <i>Type</i> .
<i>TypeDefinitionPart</i>	= [“type” <i>TypeDefinition</i> “;”] .
<i>TypeIdentifier</i>	= <i>Identifier</i> .
<i>UnpackedConformantArraySchema</i>	= “array” “[” <i>IndexTypeSpecification</i> { “;” <i>IndexTypeSpecification</i> } “]” “of” (<i>TypeIdentifier</i> <i>ConformantArraySchema</i>) .

<i>UnpackedStructuredType</i>	=	<i>ArrayType</i> <i>RecordType</i> <i>SetType</i> <i>FileType</i> .
<i>UnsignedConstant</i>	=	<i>UnsignedNumber</i> <i>CharacterString</i> <i>ConstantIdentifier</i> “nil” .
<i>UnsignedInteger</i>	=	<i>DigitSequence</i> .
<i>UnsignedNumber</i>	=	<i>UnsignedInteger</i> <i>UnsignedReal</i> .
<i>UnsignedReal</i>	=	<i>DigitSequence</i> “.” <i>DigitSequence</i> [“e” <i>ScaleFactor</i>] <i>DigitSequence</i> “e” <i>ScaleFactor</i> .
<i>ValueParameterSpecification</i>	=	<i>IdentifierList</i> “:” (<i>TypeIdentifier</i> <i>ConformantArraySchema</i>) .
<i>Variable</i>	=	<i>EntireVariable</i> <i>ComponentVariable</i> <i>IdentifiedVariable</i> <i>BufferVariable</i> .
<i>VariableDeclaration</i>	=	<i>IdentifierList</i> “:” <i>Type</i> .
<i>VariableDeclarationPart</i>	=	[“var” <i>VariableDeclaration</i> “;” { <i>VariableDeclaration</i> “;” }] .
<i>VariableIdentifier</i>	=	<i>Identifier</i> .
<i>VariableParameterSpecification</i>	=	“var” <i>IdentifierList</i> “:” (<i>TypeIdentifier</i> <i>ConformantArraySchema</i>) .
<i>Variant</i>	=	<i>Constant</i> { “,” <i>Constant</i> } “:” (<i>FieldList</i> “”) .
<i>VariantPart</i>	=	“case” <i>VariantSelector</i> “of” <i>Variant</i> { “;” <i>Variant</i> } .
<i>VariantSelector</i>	=	[<i>TagField</i> “:”] <i>TagType</i> .
<i>WhileStatement</i>	=	“while” <i>BooleanExpression</i> “do” <i>Statement</i> .
<i>WithStatement</i>	=	“with” <i>RecordVariableList</i> “do” <i>Statement</i> .
<i>WriteParameter</i>	=	<i>Expression</i> [“:” <i>IntegerExpression</i> [“:” <i>IntegerExpression</i>]] .
<i>WriteParameterList</i>	=	(“(<i>FileVariable</i> <i>WriteParameter</i>) { “,” <i>WriteParameter</i> } “)” .

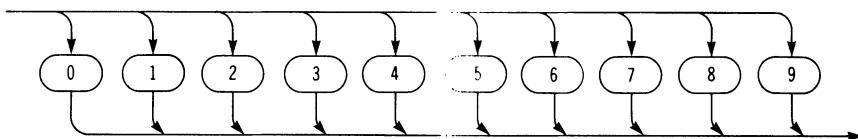
Syntax Diagrams

The diagrams for *Letter*, *Digit*, *Identifier*, *Directive*, *UnsignedInteger*, *UnsignedNumber*, and *CharacterString* describe the formation of lexical symbols from characters. The other diagrams described the formation of syntactic constructions from symbols.

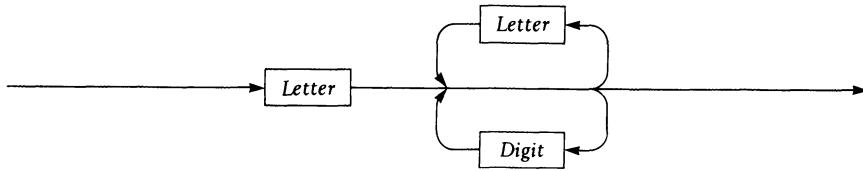
Letter



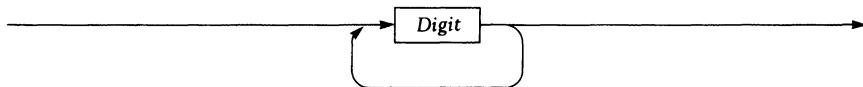
Digit



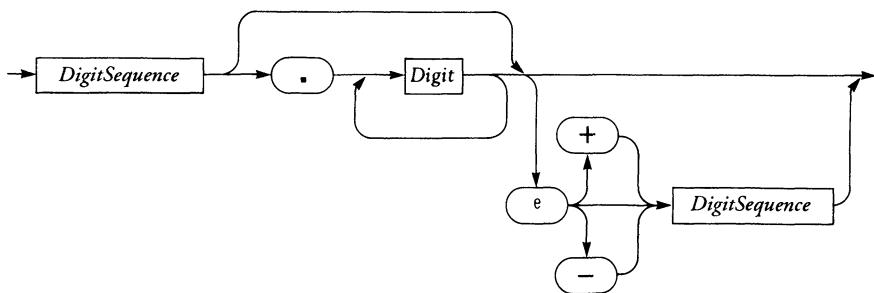
Identifier and Directive



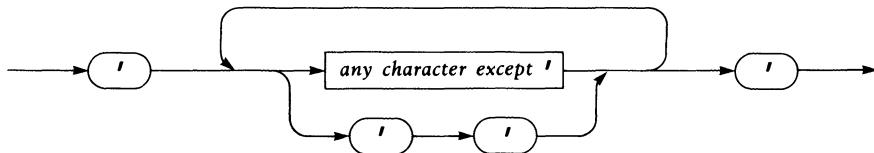
UnsignedInteger and DigitSequence



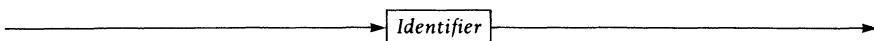
UnsignedNumber

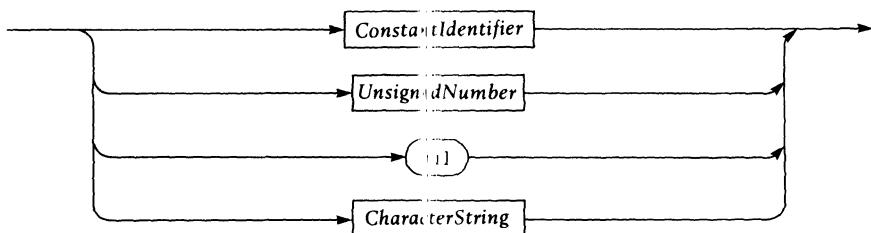
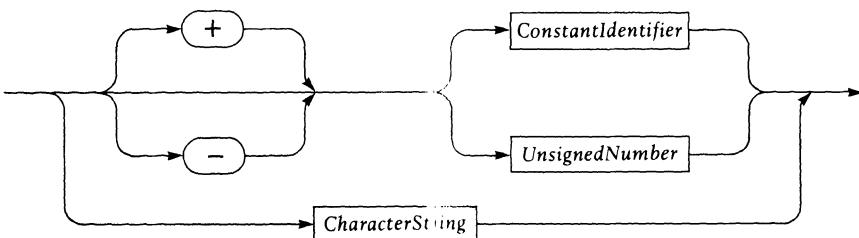
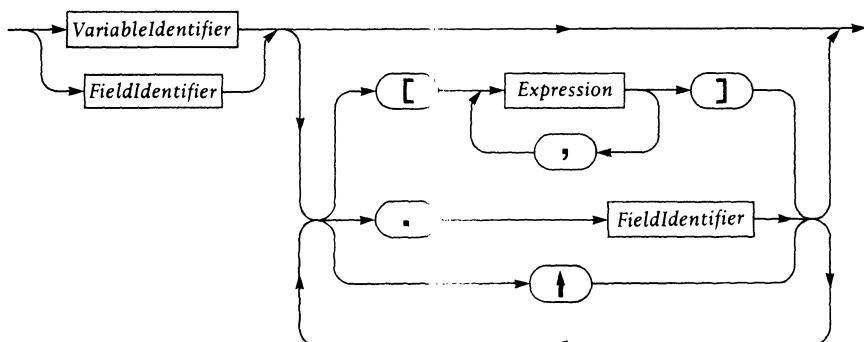


CharacterString

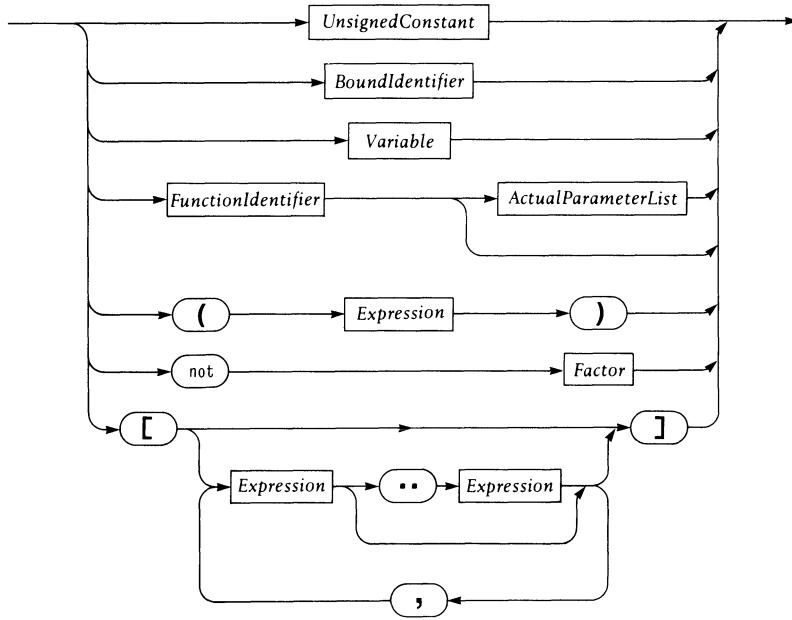


*ConstantIdentifier, VariableIdentifier, FieldIdentifier, BoundIdentifier,
TypeIdentifier, ProcedureIdentifier and FunctionIdentifier*

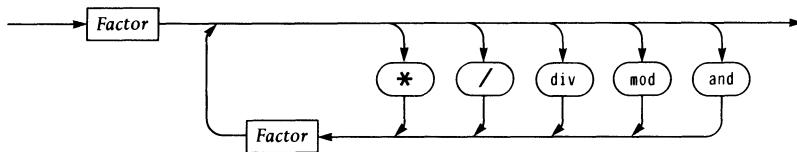


UnsignedConstant*Constant**Variable*

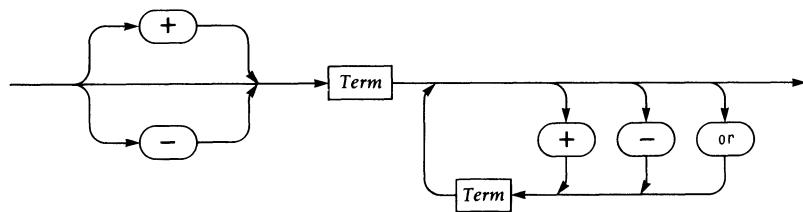
Factor

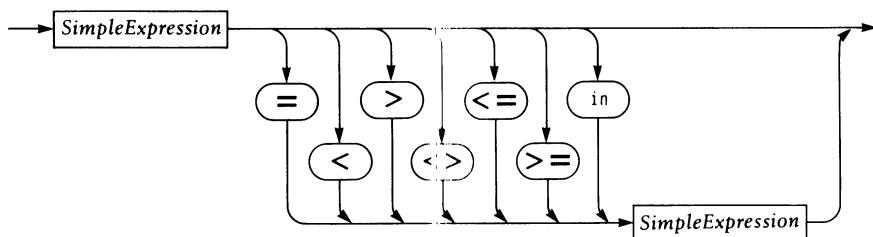
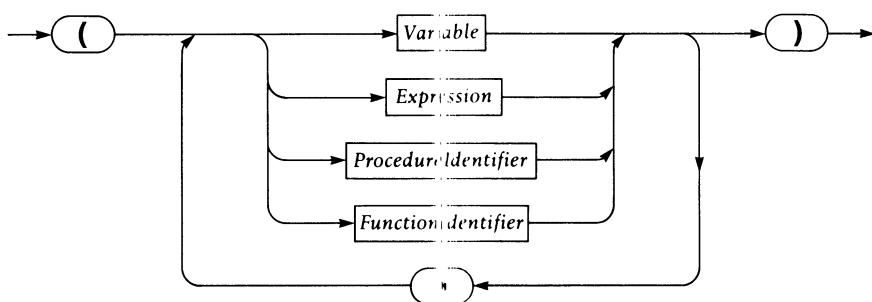
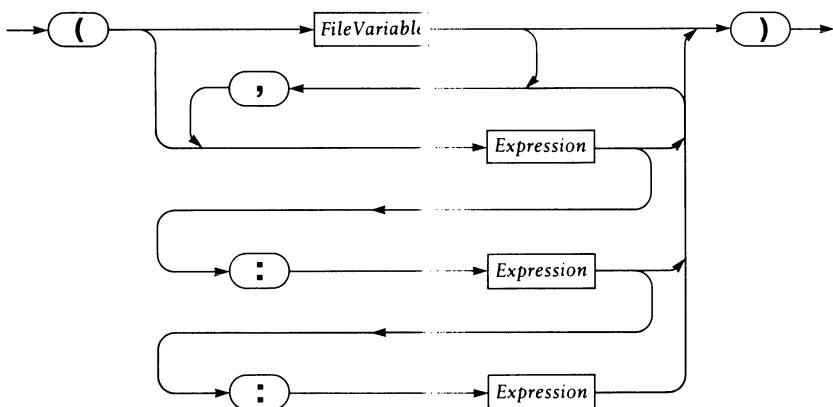


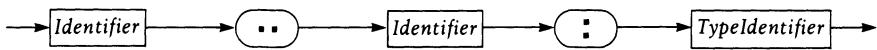
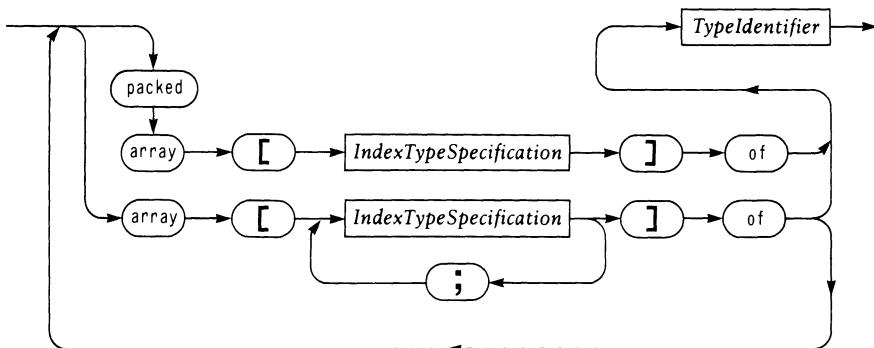
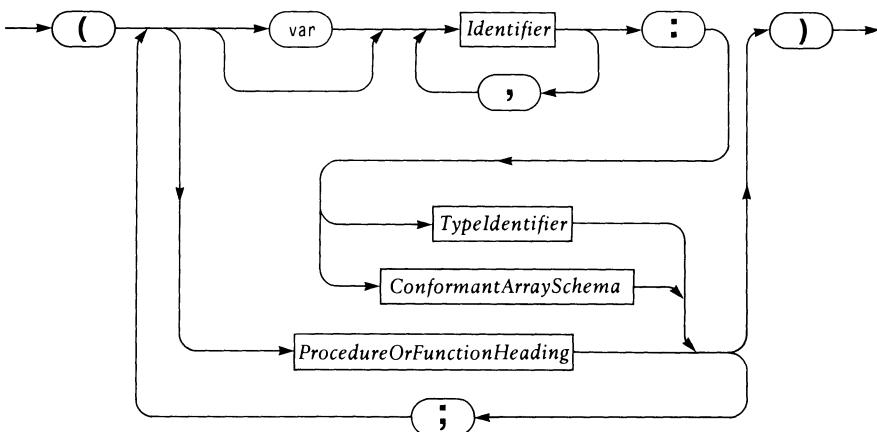
Term

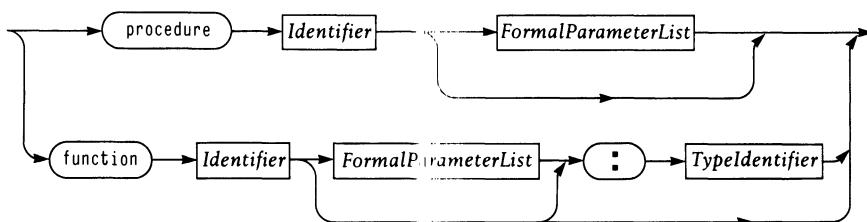
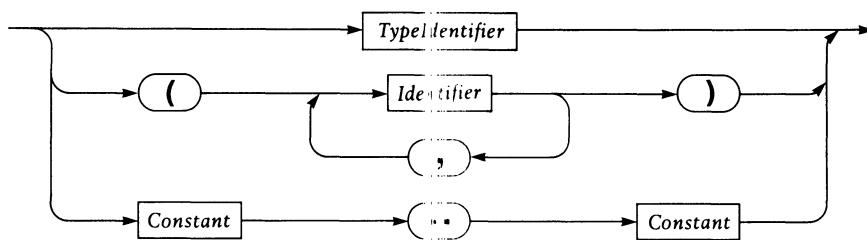
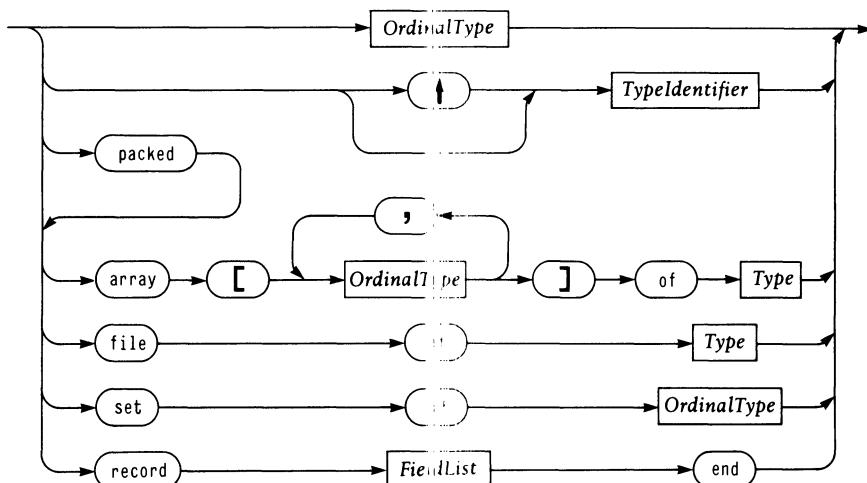


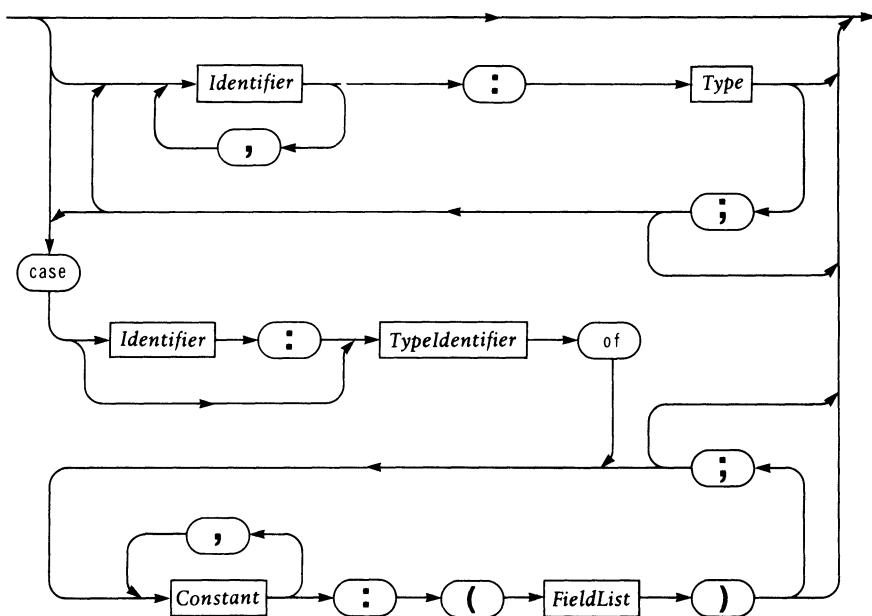
SimpleExpression

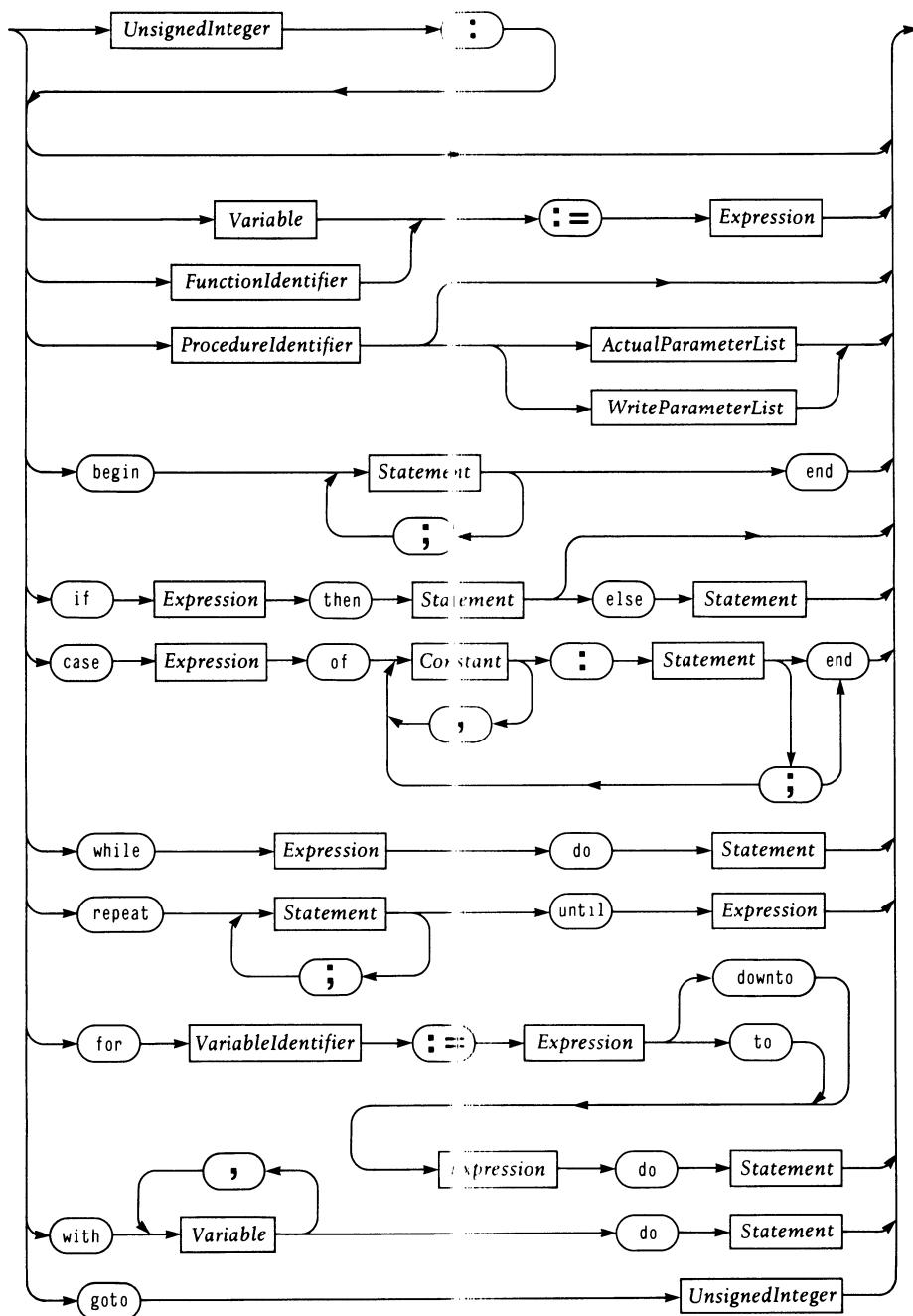


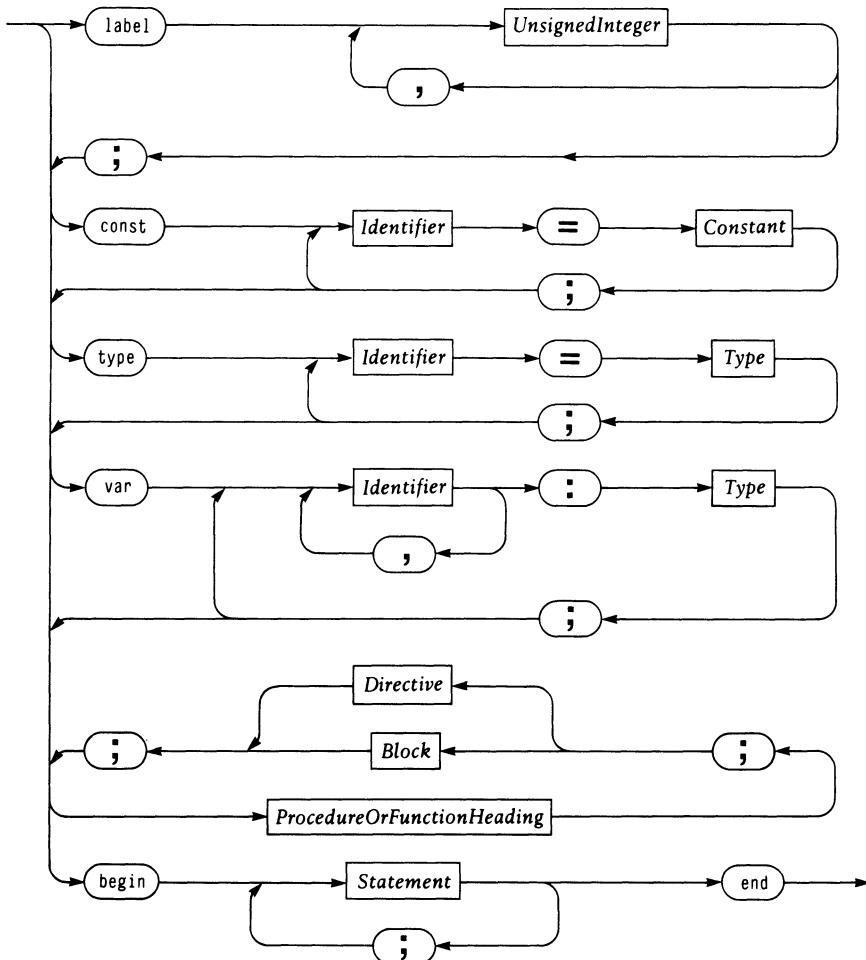
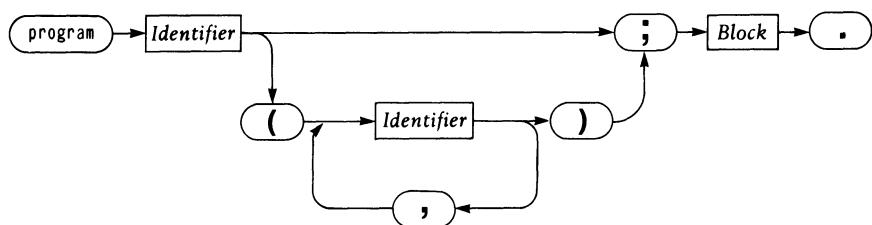
Expression*ActualParameterList**WriteParameterList*

IndexTypeSpecification*ConformantArraySchema**FormalParameterList*

ProcedureOrFunctionHeading*OrdinalType**Type*

FieldList

Statement

Block*Program*

APPENDIX E

Summary of Changes to Pascal User Manual and Report Necessitated by the ISO 7185 Standard

This appendix merely gives a non-exhaustive overview of the technical changes made to this book as it was being revised for the third (ISO Standard) edition. The summary should be useful to owners of previous editions.

Report 3: Notation and Terminology

Use of EBNF instead of BNF.

Definitions of error, *implementation-defined*, *implementation-dependent*, *extension*, and *Standard Pascal* provided and used throughout Report.

Report 4: Symbols and Symbol Separators

Change in formulation of syntax from delimiters to separators.

Inclusion of symbol “..”.

Alternative representations for special symbols “[”, “]”, and “↑”.

Change in comment syntax; nested comments not allowed.

Identifier spelling now significant over whole length.

New symbol category: directives.

Report 5: Constants

MaxInt now included in Report

Report 6: Types

Scalar types are replaced by ordinal and real types;

definitions of succ, pred, and ord, array indexing case selection, subranges, and set base types thereby simplified.

Type compatibility now defined as “name compatibility.”

Concepts of *assignment compatibility* and *assignable types* introduced.

Specific semantic implications for packed structured types.

Consecutive “;” not permitted.

Case labels in record variants now called case constants.

Full specification of variant parts required in record types.

Inspection and generation modes specified for file types.

Type text no longer equivalent to (packed) file of char.

File types or types containing file types (i.e., non-assignable types)
not allowed as component types of file types.

Domain types introduced for pointer types.

Report 7: Variables

Concept of *undefined* and *totally undefined* variables introduced.

Input and Output now implicitly declared, textfile, program parameters if used.

Report 8: Expressions

Factor now includes conformant–array parameter bound identifier.

Order of evaluation of expressions specified as implementation–dependent.

Definition of mod operator changed.

Type of a set constructor now both packed and non–packed.

Report 9: Statements

Rules enforced regarding the accessibility of labels by gotos.

Case statement labels now called case constants.

The control variable of a for statement now a local variable only.

Several restrictions added to the for statement and its actions
rigorously defined.

Report 10: Blocks, Scope, and Activations

The concepts of a *program–point*, *activation–point*, *scope of the definition or declaration (introduction)* of labels and identifiers defined.

Scope rules defined precisely to eliminate ambiguity.

The apparent integral value of labels greater than 9999 not allowed.

Activation rules defined; binding of identifiers to variables, procedures, and functions defined.

Report 11: Procedures and Functions

Procedure and function directives are introduced;
forward now a standard directive.

Conformant–array parameters added; the concept of *conformability*
and conformant type introduced.

Full specification of the parameter lists now required of formal
procedural and functional parameters (procedures and functions
as parameters); the concept of *parameter–list congruency* introduced.

Use of tag fields as actual variable parameters disallowed.

Specification of the array parameters to pack and unpack changed.

File-handling procedures and functions and the state of the file variable
and buffer variable now rigorously defined.

Report 12: Textfile Input and Output

Procedure page standard; its file parameter optional; its actions changed.

Special *WriteParameterList* syntax added as actual parameter lists to
write and writeln.

Field widths in formatted write and writeln procedures now precisely
defined.

Report 13: Programs

Program parameters now optional and their nature specified.

Report 14: Compliance with ISO 7185

Definitions of *complying program* and *complying processor* given.

Requirements for compliance with the ISO Pascal Standard explained.

APPENDIX F

Programming Examples

Two examples are presented: a program is developed as an illustration of the method of stepwise refinement [see Reference 2] followed by a procedure serving as a model of portable software.

Example 1: Program IsItAPalindrome

A program is developed to find all integers from 1 to 100 whose squares expressed in decimal are palindromes. For example: 1 squared is 121 which is a palindrome.

A palindrome is a string of symbols from an alphabet which reads the same in forward or reverse order. Well-known examples in English include (ignoring blanks and punctuation):

“radar”

“a man, a plan, a canal, Panama”

“Doc, note, I dissent! A fast never prevents a fatness; I diet on cod.”

Example 1 Step 1:

```
program IsItAPalindrome(Outpu t);
begin
  FindAllIntegersFrom1To100WhoseSquaresArePalindromes
end { IsItAPalindrome }
```

Example 1 Step 2:

```
program IsItAPalindrome(Outpu t);
{ Find all integers from 1 to 100 whose squares are
  palindromes. }

const
  Maximum = 100;
```

```

type
  IntRange = 1..Maximum;
var
  N: IntRange;
begin
  for N := 1 to Maximum do
    if Palindrome(Sqr(N)) then
      Writeln(N, ' squared is a palindrome.')
end { IsItAPalindrome } .

```

Example 1 Step 3:

```

program IsItAPalindrome(Output);
{ Find all integers from 1 to 100 whose squares are
  palindromes. }
const
  Maximum = 100;
type
  IntRange = 1..Maximum;
  Positive = 1..MaxInt;
var
  N: IntRange;
  function Palindrome(Square: Positive): Boolean;
  var
    NPlaces: 1..5 {5 = Trunc(Log10(Sqr(Maximum))+1)};
begin { Palindrome }
  CrackDigits;
  Palindrome := CheckSymmetry(1, NPlaces)
end { Palindrome };
begin
  for N := 1 to Maximum do
    if Palindrome(Sqr(N)) then
      Writeln(N, ' squared is a palindrome.')
end { IsItAPalindrome } .

```

Example 1 Step 4:

```

program IsItAPalindrome(Output);

{ Find all integers from 1 to 100 whose squares are
  palindromes. }
const
  Maximum = 100;

```

```

type
  IntRange = 1..Maximum;
  Positive = 1..MaxInt;
var
  N: IntRange;

function Palindrome(Square : Positive): Boolean;
  const
    Places = 5 { = Trunc(Log10(Sqr(Maximum))) + 1 };
type
  NPlaces = 1..Places;
  SingleDigit = 0..9;
  DigitVec = array [NPlaces] of SingleDigit;
var
  Digits: DigitVec;
  Size: NPlaces;
procedure CrackDigits;
begin
  Size := 1;
  while Square > 9 do begin
    Digits[Size] := Square mod 10;
    Square := Square div 10;
    Size := Size + 1
  end;
  Digits[Size] := Square
end { CrackDigits };
function CheckSymmetry(Left,Right:NPlaces):Boolean;
begin
  if Left >= Right then CheckSymmetry := true
  else
    if Digits[Left] = Digits[Right] then
      CheckSymmetry:=CheckSymmetry(Left+1, Right-1)
    else CheckSymmetry := false
  end { CheckSymmetry };
begin { Palindrome }
  CrackDigits;
  Palindrome := CheckSymmetry(1, Size)
end { Palindrome };

begin
  for N := 1 to Maximum do
    if Palindrome(Sqr(N)) then
      Writeln(N, ' squared is a palindrome.')
end { IsItAPalindrome } .

```

Example 2: Procedure ReadRadixRepresentation

A generalized procedure to read integers expressed in any radix from 2 to 16 is presented.

```

type Radix = 2..16;

procedure ReadRadixRepresentation
  (var F: Text;      { contains the representation }
   var E: Boolean; { indicates presence of errors }
   var X: Integer; { set to result if no errors occur}
   R: Radix        { radix of representation }
);
{ ReadRadixRepresentation assumes that textfile F is
  positioned to read a sequence of extended digits as
  a radix-R representation of an integer.
  The extended digits, in ascending order, are:
  '0','1','2','3','4','5','6','7',
  '8','9','a','b','c','d','e','f'
  Upper-case letters corresponding to the lower-case
  letters may be used.
  The parameter E indicates whether one of the
  following errors occurred:
  (1) The textfile F was not positioned to a
      sequence of extended digits.
  (2) The sequence of digits represents an
      integer greater than Maxint.
  (3) The sequence of extended digits contains a
      digit that is not a radix-R digit. }

type
  DigitRange = 0..15;

var
  D: DigitRange;
  V: Boolean;
  S: 0..Maxint;

```

```

procedure ConvertExtendedDigit(C: Char;
                               var V: Boolean; var D: DigitRange);
{ ConvertExtendedDigit determines whether C is an
extended digit, setting V to indicate its
validity, and if V is true sets D to the
numerical value of the extended digit. }
begin { ConvertExtendedDigit }
  V := C in [ '0'..'9', 'a','b','c','d','e','f',
              'A','B','C','D','E','F' ];
  if V then
    case C of
      '0': D := 0;  '1': D := 1;  '2': D := 2;
      '3': D := 3;  '4': D := 4;  '5': D := 5;
      '6': D := 6;  '7': D := 7;
      '8': D := 8;  '9': D := 9;
      'A','a': D := 10;  'B','b': D := 11;
      'C','c': D := 12;  'D','d': D := 13;
      'E','e': D := 14;  'F','f': D := 15;
    end
  end { ConvertExtendedDigit };

begin { ReadRadixRepresentation }
  E := true;
  ConvertExtendedDigit(Fl,V,D);
  if V then
    begin
      E := false;  S := 0;
      repeat
        if D < R then
          if (Maxint - D) div R >= S then
            begin
              S := S * R + D;
              Get(F);
              ConvertExtendedDigit(Fl,v,d);
            end
          else E := true
        else E := true
      until E or not V;
      if not E then X := S
    end
  end { ReadRadixRepresentation } .

```

APPENDIX G

The ASCII Character Set

ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) is the American variant of an officially-recognized, standard, international character set called the ISO (International Organization for Standardization) set. It specifies an encoding for 128 characters. Within the ISO character code there may exist national variants for 12 symbols (such as the currency symbol \$). The 128 characters consist of 95 which print as single graphics and 33 which are used for device control. The backspace control character is specifically used to allow overprinting of characters such as accents on letters in some languages.

the 33 device-control characters:

ACK	Acknowledge	FF	Form Feed
BEL	Bell	FS	File Separator
BS	Backspace	GS	Group Separator
CAN	Cancel	HT	Horizontal Tab
CR	Carriage Return	LF	Line Feed
DC1	Device Control 1	NAK	Negative Acknowledge
DC2	Device Control 2	NUL	Null
DC3	Device Control 3	RS	Record Separator
DC4	Device Control 4	SI	Shift In
DEL	Delete	SO	Shift Out
DLE	Data Link Escape	SOH	Start of Heading
EM	End of Medium	STX	Start of Text
ENQ	Enquiry	SUB	Substitute
EOT	End of Transmission	SYN	Synchronous Idle
ESC	Escape	US	Unit Separator
ETB	End of Transmission Block	VT	Vertical Tab
ETX	End of Text		

248 Appendix G*the full 128-character set:*

			00	16	32	48	64	80	96	112	
0	NUL	DLE		()		@	P		p	
1	SOH	DC1	!	"	#	\$	A	Q	a	q	
2	STX	DC2	"	"	:	:	B	R	b	r	
3	ETX	DC3	#	:	:	:	C	S	c	s	
4	EOT	DC4	\$:	:	:	D	T	d	t	
5	ENQ	NAK	%	:	:	:	E	U	e	u	
6	ACK	SYN	&	:	:	:	F	V	f	v	
7	BEL	ETB	'	:	:	:	G	W	g	w	
8	BS	CAN	(:	:	:	H	X	h	x	
9	HT	EM)	:	:	:	I	Y	i	y	
10	LF	SUB	*	:	:	:	J	Z	j	z	
11	VT	ESC	+	:	:	:	K	[k	{	
12	FF	FS	,	:	:	:	L	\	l		
13	CR	GS	-	=	=	=	M]	m	}	
14	SO	RS	.	>	>	>	N	^	n	~	
15	SI	US	/	:	:	:	O	_	o	DEL	

The 7-bit code for a character is the sum of the column and row numbers. For example, the code for the letter G is $7 + 64 = 71$.

Index to Programs, Program Fragments, and Program Schemata

Page	Program
132 (12.2)	AddLn — Add line numbers to a textfile.
44 (4.9)	ArabicToRoman — Write a table of powers of 2 in Arabic and Roman numerals; illustrate if statement.
34 (4.1)	BeginEndExample — Illustrate compound statement; write sum of 2 numbers.
182	Bisect — (procedure); Find zeros of a polynomial.
68 (7.1)	ComplexArithmetic — Illustrate operations on complex numbers.
98	Construct a list — (schema); Illustrate use of pointers.
79 (8.1)	Convert — Read digit sequence from Input and convert to integer.
93	Copying a textfile — (schema).
200	CopyReals — Copy a file of real numbers.
200	CopyText — Copy a textfile.
39 (4.6)	Cosine — Compute cosine(X) using power-series expansion; Illustrate for statement.

250 Index to Programs

- 52 (5.1) DayTime —
Illustrate enumerated types and case statement.
- 36 (4.3) Exponentiation —
Compute power(X,Y) real X raised to natural Y.
- 123 (11.8) Exponentiation2 —
Refine Exponentiation by introducing a function.
- 38 (4.5) ForExample —
Compute Nth partial sum of harmonic series.
- 126 ForwardDeclarations — (fragment).
- 182 GCD — (procedure);
Find greatest common divisor.
- 184 GCD — (function);
Find greatest common divisor using recursion.
- 48 GotoExample — (fragment);
Illustrate goto statement.
- 40 (4.7) Graph1 —
Generate plot of f(X); Illustrate for statement.
- 59 (6.2) Graph2 —
Modify Graph1 to plot axis by using an array.
- 2 Inflation —
Find factors that units of currency will be devalued.
- 243 IsItAPalindrome —
Find all integers from 1 to 100 whose squares are palindromes.
- 129 (12.1) LetterFrequencies —
Perform a frequency count of letters in the Input file;
Illustrate textfiles.
- 62 (6.3) MatrixMul —
Multiply 2 matrices represented as arrays.
- 114 (11.4) MatrixMul2 —
Refine MatrixMul using a procedure with
conformant-array parameters.
- 184 Max — (function);
Find maximum value in a vector of real numbers.

- 186 Max — (function);
Refine Max using conformant–array parameters.
- 91 (9.2) MergeFiles —
Merge files of records.
- 58 (6.1) MinMax —
Find the largest and smallest number in a list.
- 103 (11.1) MinMax2 —
Refine MinMax by introducing a procedure declaration.
- 107 (11.2) MinMax3 —
Refine MinMax2 to process 2 lists of numbers.
- 90 (9.1) Normalize —
Normalize a file of real numbers.
- 111 (11.3) Parameters —
Illustrate value and var parameters.
- 72 Person — (fragment);
Illustrate variant record type.
- 116 (11.5) Postfix —
Convert an infix expression to Polish postfix form;
Illustrate nested, mutually recursive procedures.
- 123 Power — (function);
Compute power(X,Y), real X raised to natural Y.
- 184 Power — (function);
Compute real X raised to natural Y.
- 82 (8.3) Prime1 —
Find primes by using sets to represent Erastosthenes
Sieve.
- 82 (8.4) Prime2 —
Refine Prime1 by using sets to represent odd numbers
only.
- 83 (8.5) Prime3 —
Refine Prime2 by using an array of sets.
- 133 PromptExample — (fragment);
Enter input from interactive terminal.
- 134 Read and process a sequence of numbers — (schema).

252 Index to Programs

- 135 Read and process single numbers — (schema);
 Use SkipBlanks.
- 135 Read and process n-tuples of numbers — (schema);
 Use SkipBlanks.
- 93 Reading a textfile — (schema).
- 129 Reading characters from file Input — (schema).
- 182 ReadInteger — (procedure);
 Read a sequence of digits and convert to integer value.
- 245 ReadRadixRepresentation — (procedure);
 Generalized ReadInteger for any radix from 2 to 16.
- 37 (4.4) RepeatExample —
 Compute Nth partial sum of harmonic series.
- 99 Search a list — (schema)
 Illustrate use of pointer
- 80 (8.2) SetOperations —
 Illustrate set operations
- 135 SkipBlanks — (procedure);
 Skip blanks between numbers on textfile.
- 125 (11.10) SideEffect —
 Illustrate function side effects.
- 184 Sqrt — (function);
 Compute square root by Newton's method.
- 41 (4.8) SummingTerms —
 Compute sum of terms of a series 4 ways.
- 124 (11.9) SumSeries —
 Write a table of a series sum progression;
 Illustrate functional parameters.
- 25 (3.1) TemperatureConversion
 Write table of Celcius and Fahrenheit temperatures.
- 118 (11.6) Traversal —
 Illustrate binary-tree traversal using recursive procedures.
- 120 (11.7) Traversal2 —
 Refine Traversal by introducing procedural parameters.

- | | |
|-----------|--|
| 96 (10.1) | WaitingList —
Simulate clients waiting;
Illustrate pointers. |
| 36 (4.2) | WhileExample —
Compute Nth partial sum of harmonic series. |
| 73 | WithExample — (fragment);
Illustrate with statement. |
| 74 | WithExample2 — (fragment);
Illustrate with statement. |
| 75 | WithExample3 — (fragment);
Illustrate with statement. |
| 92 | Writing a textfile — (schema). |
| 129 | Writing characters on file Output — (schema). |

Index

Abs, 18, 20, 192, 204, 211
Absolute value, *see* Abs
Abstraction, 14
Action, concept of, 1, 28, 143
Activation
 and formal parameters, 185
 point, 172, 181, 187
Activations, 172, 177, 179–180
Active variant, of record, 70, 100,
 158, 191
Actual
 functional parameter, 122, 124,
 188
 parameter, 107–109, 111–113,
 147, 175, 180, 185, 186–187
EBNF for, 187, 219, 225
lists, 106, 107, 170, 186–188
 EBNF for, 187, 219, 225
 syntax diagram for, 107, 234
procedural parameter, 117, 121,
 188
value conformant–array parameter,
 113, 187
value parameter, 110, 187
variable parameter, 110, 154,
 175, 187

\dding operators,
EBNF for, 165, 218, 225
operands of, 165
and precedence, 32, 166
 (*see also* Arithmetic operators)
\ddresses, for pointer types, 94
\lgol 60, vii, 6, 7, 8, 142–143
\lgol–W, vii
\lgorithm, 1, 179
\lternative representations,
 of symbols, 10, 148, 212
\nd, 16, 168, 208, 212
 (*see also* Boolean operators)
\postrophe, how to represent, 18,
 150
\rabic to Roman, program for,
 44–46
\rcTan, 20, 193, 204, 211
\rctangent, *see* ArcTan
\rgument, *see* Parameter
\rithmetic
 functions, predeclared, 192–193
 operations, on Boolean values, 8
 operators, 17, 146, 167, 208
\rray
 components of, 144, 156

- Array (*continued*)
 - conformant, *see* Conformant array
 - data types, 55, 210
 - declaration, 57
 - index type, 56, 112, 156
 - indexing, 20, 209
 - multidimensional, 60
 - not dynamic, 7
 - parameters, conformant, 63, 112–113, 185–187
 - sample programs of, 58–60
 - types, 56–65, 156
 - EBNF for, 156, 218, 225
 - syntax diagram for, 61
 - variable, EBNF for, 162, 219, 225
- ASCII character set, 247–248
- Assignable types, 160
- Assignment
 - compatibility, 33, 53, 160
 - examples of, 33, 170
 - multiple, 7
 - operator, 209
 - statement, 28–33, 145, 170
 - EBNF for, 169
 - syntax diagram for, 29
 - to array variable, 57
 - to file, 87
 - to set, 76, 77
- Base type, of set, 76, 77, 144, 158, 160, 165–166
 - EBNF for, 158, 218, 225
- Begin, and compound statement, 34, 172
- Binary tree, 117, 118
- Blanks, as symbol separators, 9
 - (*see also* Space)
- Block
 - EBNF for, 1, 177, 215, 225
 - of procedure, 105
 - structure, 5, 6, 8
 - syntax diagram for, 4, 21, 239
- Blocks, 145, 146, 177–180
 - anonymous, 8
 - order of parts in, 1
- Boolean
 - expression
 - EBNF for, 165, 219, 225
 - evaluation of, 32
 - functions, predeclared, 193
 - negation, and precedence, 32
 - operators, 146, 168, 208
 - type, 15, 16–17, 51, 143, 154, 210
 - write, 135, 137, 196–198
- Bound identifier, 112, 179, 186, 189
 - EBNF for, 186, 219, 225
 - syntax diagram for, 231
- Braces, 212
 - (*see also* Comment)
- Brackets, 212 (*see also* Array and Set constructor)
- Buffer
 - accessing, 209
 - variable, 28, 87, 88, 89, 132, 164
 - EBNF for, 163, 219, 225
 - syntax diagram for, 87
- Call by name, 7
- Carriage-control character, 128
- Case
 - EBNF for, 173, 217, 225
 - index, EBNF for, 173, 217, 225
 - statement, 7, 20, 46–47, 146, 173
 - EBNF for, 173, 217, 225
 - syntax diagram for, 46
 - in variant record, 70
- Char type, 18–19, 143, 154, 210
- Character
 - read, 134, 195
 - strings, 12–13, 149–150
 - EBNF for, 151, 220, 225
 - syntax diagram for, 13, 231
 - (*see also* Strings)
 - type, *see* Char type
 - write, 136–137, 197
- Chr, 19, 194, 204, 211
- Cobol, 7
- Comment
 - EBNF for, 150
 - as separator, 9, 150

- Compiler, 8 (*see also* Implementation)
- Complex arithmetic, sample program
for, 68–69
- Component
of array, 56, 144, 156, 162
of file, 86, 87, 144, 158, 163
of record, 65, 67, 69–70, 144, 156,
162–163
(*see also* Fields)
of set, 145
of structured types, 144–145,
155, 161
- type, 55, 56, 87, 156, 157–158
EBNF for, 156, 218, 225
variables, 28, 162, 162–164
EBNF for, 161, 219, 225
syntax diagram for, 57
- Compound statement, 34, 146,
171–172
EBNF for, 172, 217, 225
syntax diagram for, 34
- Computer program, 1, 143
- Concatenation of strings, 8
- Conditional
expressions, 7
statement, 43–47, 145, 172–173
EBNF for, 172, 217, 225
- Conditions, mutually exclusive, 44
- Conformant
array
and implementation levels, 185,
201
parameters, 185, 186, 187
and ISO standard, 201
schemas, 185–186, 188–189
EBNF for, 185, 216, 225
syntax diagram for, 112, 235
type, derivation of, 189
- Conjunction, 208
- Constant
definition, 23, 25–26
EBNF for, 152, 215, 225
part
EBNF for, 152, 215, 225
syntax diagram for, 23
- EBNF for, 152, 218, 225
identifier
EBNF for, 152, 219, 226
predefined, 16, 17, 153, 211
syntax diagram for, 23
- synonyms, scope of, 5
syntax diagram for, 23, 232
- Constants, 151–152
predefined, 211
- Constructor, set
(*see* Set constructor)
- Control variable, of for statement,
7, 37, 38, 39, 175
EBNF for, 175, 217, 226
- Conversion from Char to Integer,
sample program for, 79, 245–
246
- Copying, textfile, 93
- Cos, 20, 193, 211
- Cosine
program for, 39–40
(*see also* Cos)
- Data**
base, using pointer types, 97
of computer program, 1, 143
transfer procedures, predeclared,
192, 194
type, 7, 14, 194, 210
(*see also* Type)
- Date, implemented as record, 67
- Declarations, 1, 7, 143
(*see also* specific kind of
declaration, e.g., Function
declaration)
- Definitions, 1, 143
(*see also* specific kind of
definition, e.g.,
Type definition)
- Delayed evaluation of buffer
variable, 132–133
- Designator
field, 162–163
function, 29, 122

- Difference, *see* Set difference
 Digit
 EBNF for, 149, 220, 226
 ordering in type char, 18, 153
 Sequence
 EBNF for, 150, 220, 226
 syntax diagram for, 11, 230
 Directives, 13, 149, 181, 183, 212
 EBNF for, 148
 syntax diagram for, 13, 230
 (*see also* Forward declaration)
 Disjunction, 208
 Dispose, 94, 101, 160, 191–192,
 204, 211
 Div, 17, 31, 32, 165–167, 208
 definition of, 167
 precedence of, 32, 167
 (*see also* Arithmetic operators)
 Division by zero, 168
 Do, *see* Repetitive statements, With
 statement
 Domain type, of pointer, 145, 159
 EBNF for, 159, 217, 226
 Downto, *see* For statement
 Dynamic
 allocation procedures, predeclared,
 191
 arrays, 7, 8
 set of values of pointer type, 15
 variables, 94, 145
- EBNF**
 alphabetical, for Pascal, 225–229
 cross reference of, 221–224
 hierarchical, for Pascal, 215–220
 of Polish notation, 113
 (*see also* Extended Backus–Naur
 Form; also particular language
 construct, EBNF for, e.g.
 Array type, EBNF for)
- ElementDescription, EBNF for,
 165, 219, 226
- Else, *see* If statement
 Empty
 parts of block, 1
 file, 86, 158
- set, 76–77, 166
 statement, 34, 44, 169
 EBNF for, 169, 218, 226
 End, and compound statements,
 34, 172
 End-of-file, 87, 159 (*see also* Eof)
 End-of-line, 9, 92, 93, 134, 150,
 159, (*see also* Eoln)
 EntireVariable, 28
 EBNF for, 162, 219, 226
 Enumerated types, 15, 50–53, 143,
 144, 154, 153, 210
 EBNF for, 154, 217, 226
 syntax diagram for, 50
 Eof
 and buffer variable, 87, 88, 132,
 190
 and file handling, 190
 as predefined Boolean function,
 17, 193, 204, 211
 and write, 135
 Eoln
 and buffer variable, 92, 132, 164
 and file handling, 92–93
 as predefined Boolean function,
 17, 193, 204, 211
 Equality, *see* Set equality,
 Relational operators
 Equivalence 17
 (*see also* Set operations)
 Eratosthenes' sieve, 81
 Error, and standards, 148, 201
 Evaluation
 of buffer variables, 132, 133
 order of, 30–32, 166
 Exclusive or, 17
 (*see also* Boolean operators)
 Exp, 20, 193, 205, 211
 Exponential function, *see* Exp
 Exponentiation
 operator, 8
 program for, 36, 123
 Expressions, 28–32, 165–169
 EBNF for, 165, 218, 226
 evaluation of, 30–32
 in assignment statement, 145
 syntax diagram for, 32, 234

- Extended Backus–Naur Form, 3, 147, 213–214 (*see also* specific example, e.g., ProgramHeading, EBNF for, and EBNF)
- Extension, 148, 201
- External files, 89, 199

- Factor**
 - EBNF for, 165, 219, 226
 - evaluation of, 167
 - syntax diagram, 30, 233
 - type of, 166
- False, as predefined constant identifier, 16, 152, 154, 211
- Field**
 - designators, 163
 - EBNF for, 163, 219, 226
 - identifier, scope of, 65, 178–179
 - EBNF for, 157, 219, 226
 - syntax diagram for, 231
 - list, 156, 157–158
 - EBNF for, 157, 218, 226
 - syntax diagram for, 66, 237
 - of variant record, 72
 - width, of write, 136–137, 196–199
- File**
 - data types, in type taxonomy, 55, 210
 - declarations, 89, 90
 - handling procedures, predeclared, 190 (*see also* Get, Put, Read, Reset, Rewrite, Write)
 - length, 86, 158
 - parameter, 1, 110, 128
 - structure, 145
 - types, 86–93, 158–159
 - EBNF for, 158, 218, 226
 - not assignable, 33, 160
 - syntax diagram for, 87
 - (*see also* Text)
 - variable, 87, 164,
 - EBNF for, 164, 219, 226
 - (*see also* Textfile)
- FinalValue, EBNF for, 175, 217, 226
- Fixed**
 - part, of field list, 157, 158

- EBNF for, 157, 218, 226
- syntax diagram for, 66
- point notation and write, 137, 197–198
- records, 65–69
- Floating point notation, of write, 137–138, 197
- For statements, 7, 37–39, 146, 174, 175–176
- EBNF for, 175, 217, 226
- examples of, 38, 39, 41, 42, 176
- and real type, 20
- syntax diagram for, 38
- Formal parameter, 107, 111, 147, 170
- list, 181, 183, 185–186
- EBNF for, 185, 216, 226
- syntax diagram for, 107, 235
- section, EBNF for, 185, 216, 226
- Formatted writes, 135–139, 196–199
- Fortran, 6, 7
- Forward**
 - declaration, 126
 - of function, 8, 123, 183
 - of procedure, 8, 122, 181
 - sample program using, 125
 - directive, 212
 - (*see* Forward declaration)
- Fraction length, of write, 136–137
- Function**, 122–125, 181–194
 - activation of, 167, 180
 - concept of, 102
 - declarations, 27, 122, 183–184
 - EBNF for, 183, 215, 226
 - examples of, 183–184
 - and scope, 5, 178–179
- designator, 30, 122, 166
- EBNF for, 165, 218, 226
- forward declaration, 8, 123, 125, 183
- heading,
 - EBNF for, 183, 216, 226
 - syntax diagram for, 122
- identifier,
 - EBNF for, 183, 219, 226
 - syntax diagram for, 231

- Function** (*continued*)
 identification, EBNF for, 183, 216, 226
 predeclared, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 122, 192–194, 211
 recursive, 8, 122, 183
 sample program using, 123, 124–125, 126
- Functional parameters**, 107, 110, 122, 124, 146, 186, 188
 sample program using, 124–125
- specification**, EBNF for, 186, 216, 226
- Generation mode**, for file, 159
- Get**, 88, 128, 190, 205, 211
- Global scope**, 5, 27, 105
- Goto statement**, 47–49, 171–172
 and activations, 172, 179
 caution about, 49
 EBNF for, 171, 217, 226
 and expressions, 164
 and statement sequences, 171
 syntax diagram for, 47
- Graph**, program for, 40–41, 59–60
- Harmonic series**, Nth partial sum, program for, 36, 37, 38
- Heading**, *see* Program headings, Procedures, Functions
- Hoare**, C.A.R., 81, 82, 202, 203
- Host type**, of subrange type, 53, 154
- Identified variable**, 28, 94, 159, 164, 194
 EBNF for, 163, 219, 226
 syntax diagram for, 95
- Identifier**
 definition of, 10, 148
 EBNF for, 149, 220, 227
 examples of, 11, 149
 list, EBNF for, 3, 154, 219, 227
 scope of, 5, 6, 27, 149, 178–179
 standard, 12, 211
 syntax diagram for, 11, 230
- Identifying values**, of pointer type, 95, 159, 164, 194
- If statement**, 43–46, 146, 172
 EBNF for, 172, 217, 227
 syntax diagram for, 43
- Implementation**
 of Boolean expressions, 32
 defined, 148
 definition, of Char type, 18
 dependent, 148
 features, and ISO standard, 201
 operand evaluation, 166
 order of accessing variable or result, 170
 reset or rewrite of input or output, 200
 of end-of-line markers, 93
 of files, 87
 of pointers, 94
 of sets, 83
 of subrange variables, 54
- Implication**, operation, 17
- In**, operator, 32, 78, 169, 208
- Inclusion**, *see* Set inclusion
- Index**
 EBNF for, 162, 219, 227
 type
 of array, 56, 112, 144, 156, 189
 EBNF for, 156, 218, 227
 specification
 EBNF for, 186, 216, 227
 syntax diagram for, 112, 235
- Indexed variables**, 162
 EBNF for, 162, 219, 227
- Inequality**, *see* Set inequality, Relational operators
- Infix notation**, sample program to convert, 116–117
- Inflation**, sample program for, 2
- InitialValue**, EBNF for, 175, 217, 227
- Inorder**, 117, 119, 120
- Input**
 devices, 127–128, 194
 file, 25, 92, 128, 193, 194, 211
 in program parameter list, 199
- Inspection mode**, for file, 159

- Integer**
 read, 133–134, 195
 type, 17, 143, 153, 210
 write, 135–137, 197
- IntegerExpression**, EBNF for, 165, 219, 227
- Intersection**, *see* Set intersection
- Introduction**, scope of, 178–179
- I/O handling**, 127
- ISO Standard**, 112, 185, 200–201, 203
- Jump**, *see* Goto statement
- Label**, 13, 146
 and cases, 47
 declaration part, 22, 178
 part
 EBNF for, 178, 215, 227
 syntax diagram for, 22
- EBNF** for, 178, 220, 227
 and goto, 47–48, 170
 as program-points in activations, 179
 scope of, 5, 27
 in statements, 169
- Letter**
 EBNF for, 149, 220, 222
 syntax diagram for, 11, 230
- LetterFrequencies**, sample
 program for, 129–131
- List**
 linked, 98, 100, 101
 sample program using, 96–97
- Ln**, 20, 193, 205, 211
- Local**
 files, 194
 scope, 5, 27, 178
 variable, 105, 122, 146, 179
 as for statement
 control variable, 175
 initial value of, 160
- Logarithm**, *see* Ln
- Logical**, *see* Boolean
- Loop**, *see* Repetitive statements
- Lower-case letters**, 10, 19, 148, 153
- Matrix**
 as multidimensional array, 61
 multiplication, sample program for, 62–63, 114–115
 sample program using, 62
- MaxInt**, 17, 149, 151, 153, 168, 211, 246
- Membership**, *see* Set membership
- Memory space**, saving by using subrange type, 54
- Merge files**, sample program to, 91
- Meta-identifier**, 147, 151, 161, 213, 214
- MinMax**, sample program for, 58, 103–104, 108–109
- Mod**, 17, 31, 165, 167, 208
- Modularity**, of program, 23
- Multiple assignments**, 7
- Multiplying operators**
 EBNF for, 165, 218, 227
 and precedence, 31, 32, 166
(see also Arithmetic operators)
- Natural logarithms**, *see* Ln
- Negation**, 208
- Nested**
 record, 69
 variant parts, of record, 72
 with statements, 74–75
- New**, 94, 95, 99, 158, 160, 191, 206, 211
- Nil**, 31, 95, 145, 159, 166
- Not**, 16, 165, 166, 168
(see also Boolean operators)
- Numbers**, representation of, 12, 149
- Odd**, 17, 26, 193, 205, 211
- Operands**, 166–167
- Operations**, on sets, 78, 168
- Operators**, 14–20, 63, 167–169
 precedence of, 30–32, 167, 209
- Or**, 16, 165, 168
(see also Boolean operators)
- Ord**, 16, 19, 51, 153, 194, 205, 211

- Ordinal
 - data types, in type taxonomy, 15, 210
 - expression, 165
 - and case statement, 146
 - EBNF for, 165, 219, 227
 - functions, predeclared, 193–194
 - (*see also* Ord, Chr, Pred, Succ)
 - numbers, 15, 152
 - types, 15, 50, 143, 153
 - EBNF for, 153, 217, 227
 - identifier, EBNF for, 152, 219, 227
 - syntax diagram for, 16, 236
- Output devices, 127, 194
- Output file, 25, 92, 128, 196, 199, 200, 211
- Own attribute, 8

- Pack, 64, 192, 205, 211
- Packed, 155, 166
 - array, 63, 113, 155
 - conformant array schema, EBNF for, 185, 216, 227
 - file, 92
 - set constructor, 33, 77, 166
 - and structured data type, 56
- Page procedure, 128, 140, 199, 205–206, 211
- Palindrome, sample program for, 242–245
- Parameter
 - conformant array, 112–113, 117, 185–187
 - sample program using, 114–115
 - external files as, 89
 - kinds of, 107, 110, 146, 185
 - list, 1, 106–107, 179, 185–188
 - congruity, 188
 - passed by reference and by value, 8, (*see also* Variable
 - parameters, Value parameters)
 - to Read procedure, 133–134
 - to Write procedure, 135–138
 - (*see also* Identifiers)
- Parentheses, 3

- Pascal
 - aims of language, 142
 - Blaise, vi
 - News, v, 203
 - Revised Report, vii
 - User's Group, v
- Pattern recognition, 127
- Peripherals, 87
 - (*see also* Input devices, Output devices)
- PL/I, v, 6, 7, 8
- Pointer
 - data types, in type taxonomy, 14, 210
 - type, 7, 94–99, 158
 - EBNF for, 159, 217, 227
 - and function result, 122, 146, 183
 - identifier, EBNF for, 159, 219, 227
 - sample program using, 96–97
 - syntax diagram for, 95
 - and variable, 29
 - variables, 94, 145, 163
 - EBNF for, 163, 219, 227
- Polish notation, 113, 116–117
- Portability, of programs, 23, 147
- Position, in parameter lists, 187
- Postfix, sample program for 116–117
- Postorder, 117, 119, 120
- Power, function for, 184
- Powerset, 144, 158
- Precedence, *see* Operator precedence
- Pred, 16, 18, 19, 51, 153, 206, 211
- Predecessor, of ordinal value, 15
 - (*see also* Pred)
- Predeclared
 - functions, 181, 192–194, 204–207
 - identifiers, 11, 211
 - procedures, 181, 190–193, 204–207
- Predefined
 - constant identifiers, 16, 17, 151, 211
 - type identifiers, 15, 89, 153, 158, 211
- Preorder, 117, 119, 120

- Prime numbers, sample
 - program for, 82–85
- Procedural parameters, 107, 110, 117, 147, 185–188
 - sample program using, 120–121
- ProceduralParameterSpecification, EBNF for, 186, 216, 227
- Procedures, 180, 181–182, 190–192
 - activation of, 33, 111, 170, 179–180
 - as actual parameters, 187–188
 - block, 147
 - concept of, 102
 - declaration, 27, 102, 103, 178, 179, 181
 - EBNF for, 182, 215, 227
 - examples of, 182
 - forward declaration of, 122, 125, 181
 - heading, 105, 107, 181
 - EBNF for, 182, 216, 227
 - syntax diagram for, 103
 - identification, EBNF for, 182, 216, 227
 - identifier, 105, 181
 - EBNF for, 182, 219, 227
 - predeclared, 190–193, 204–207
 - syntax diagram for, 231
 - recursive 8, 113, 182
 - sample program using, 80, 96–97, 103–104, 107–108, 111, 114–115, 116–117, 118–119, 120
 - statements, 33, 106, 146, 170–171
 - EBNF for, 171, 217, 227
 - syntax diagram for, 206
 - ProcedureAndFunctionDeclarationPart
 - EBNF for, 181, 215, 227
 - syntax diagram for, 102
 - ProcedureOrFunctionHeading,
 - syntax diagram for, 102, 236
 - Processor, and ISO standard, 200
 - Productions, in EBNF, 3, 213
 - Program–point, 179
 - Program, 199–200
 - as EBNF start symbol, 214
 - block, 1, 146
 - development, 80–81, 106
 - EBNF for, 3, 199, 215, 227
 - heading, 1, 3, 21, 199–200
 - EBNF for, 3, 199, 215, 227
 - syntax diagram, 4, 22
 - parameter list, EBNF for, 199, 215, 227
 - parameters, 199
 - syntax diagram for, 4, 21, 239
 - Programming
 - examples, 242–248
 - (*see also* Language feature, sample program using, e.g., Procedures, sample program using)
 - style, 8
 - Prompt interactive user, sample program to, 133
 - Put, 88, 128, 190, 206, 211

 - Radix read, sample program for, 245–246
 - Random–access
 - of array, 57, 144
 - of record, 65, 144
 - of set, 76, 144
 - Read, 206, 211
 - and buffer variable evaluation, 87, 88, 132
 - and default file, 128
 - and packed variable, 190
 - procedure, 133–135, 191, 194–195
 - from text file, 92, 93
 - sample program using 92, 134
 - Readability, of program, 106
 - ReadIn, 206, 211
 - and buffer variable evaluation, 132
 - and default file, 128
 - of packed variable, 190
 - procedure, 133–134, 195–196
 - from text file, 92–93
 - Read–only variable,
 - bound identifier similar to, 112
 - Real
 - number, 7
 - read, 134, 195
 - and subrange type, 53
 - type, 15, 19–20, 143, 153, 210

- Real** (*continued*)
 identifier, EBNF for, 153, 219, 228
 write, 135–138, 197–198
- Record**
 data types, in type taxonomy, 55, 210
 accessing component of, 72–73, 162–163
 sample program using, 68–69
 structure, 144
 types, 65–75, 156–158
 EBNF for, 157, 218, 228
 syntax diagram for, 66
 (*see also* Fixed records,
 Variant records)
- section**
 EBNF for, 157, 218, 228
 syntax diagram for, 66
- variable**
 EBNF for, 163, 219, 228
 list, EBNF for, 177, 217, 228
- Recursion**, sample program using, 116–117, 118–119
- Recursive**
 data structures, 95
 functions, 123, 183
 procedures, 7, 113, 182
- Reference to a variable**, 161, 163, 164, 170, 176, 180
- Refinement steps**, 102, 242–245
- Relational operators**, 31, 146, 169, 208
 EBNF for, 165, 218, 228
 on enumerated types, 51
 and ordinal types, 16
 and precedence, 32, 166
 and sets, 78
 and string types, 63
- Repeat statement**, 35, 37, 146, 174
 EBNF for, 174, 217, 228
 examples of, 37, 174
 syntax diagram, 35
- Repetitive statements**, 35–43, 173–176
 EBNF for, 174, 217, 228
 (*see also* Repeat, For, While)
- Reserved words**, 7
 (*see also* Word symbols)
- Reset**, 87, 129, 132, 190, 199, 206, 211
- Result type**,
 EBNF for, 183, 218, 228
 of function, 122, 146, 183
 of operators, 208
 of relational operators, 145
- Rewrite**, 88, 129, 190, 199, 206, 211
- Round**, 18, 193, 206, 211
- Run-time validity check**,
 of subrange types, 54
- ScaleFactor**, EBNF for, 150, 220, 228
- Scope**, 5–6, 177–179
 of field identifier, 65, 75, 156, 176, 178–179
 of function variables, 122
 of identifier, 5, 6, 105, 146, 149
 of constant identifiers,
 introduced by enumerated type
 in record type, 72
 and spelling, 149, 178
 in with statement, 73, 75, 177
- Search**, of linked list, 99
- Secondary storage**, 87
- Selection**
 from linked list, 98
 (*see also* Component)
- Selector type**, and case statement, 46
- Semicolon**
 and else, 44
 rules for, 34
- Separators**, of symbols, 9, 150
- Sequential-access**, of file, 86–87
- Sequential file**, as file type, 86, 145, 157–158
- Set**
 assignment, example of, 79
 base type, and real type, 20
 constructors, 77, 165–166, 209
 EBNF for, 164, 219, 229
 syntax diagram, 77
 data structure, 7, 144

- Set** (*continued*)
 data types, in type taxonomy, 55, 210
 declaration, example of, 78
 difference, 78, 145, 168, 209
 equality, 78
 implementation of, 83
 inclusion, 78, 208
 inequality, 78
 intersection, 78, 145, 168, 209
 membership, 76, 78, 208
 operators, 78–80, 146, 168–169
 sample program using, 79–80, 82–85, 129–131
- types**
 definition of, 76, 158
 EBNF for, 158, 218, 228
 syntax diagram for, 76
 union, 78, 146, 169, 209
- Side effects**, 125–126, 146
- Sign**
 EBNF for, 150, 220, 228
(see also Arithmetic operators)
- SignedInteger**, EBNF for, 150
- SignedNumber**, EBNF for, 150
- SignedReal**, EBNF for, 150
- Simple**
 data types, in type taxonomy, 14, 15, 210
 expressions, 31, 165–167
 EBNF for, 165, 217, 228
 syntax diagrams for, 31, 233
 statements, 170–172
 EBNF for, 170, 216, 228
 types, 14–20, 143, 153–154
 EBNF for, 153, 217, 228
 and function result, 122, 146
 predefined, 15, 154–155
 syntax diagram for, 15
(see also Ordinal types, Real)
- Sin**, 20, 193, 206, 211
- Sine**, *see Sin*
- SkipBlanks**, sample procedure for, 134–135
- Space**, as separator, 150
(see also Blank)
- SpecialSymbol**, EBNF for, 149
- Spelling**
 of directive, 149
 of identifier, 149
 of label, 178
 and scope, 178
 of word symbol, 149
- Sqr**, 18, 20, 36, 192, 206, 211
- Sqrt**, 20, 193, 207, 211
- Square root**, example function for, 183 (*see also Sqrt*)
- Square**, *see Sqr*
- Standard Pascal**, 147, 200–201, 203
- Start symbol**, for EBNF for Pascal, 214
- Statement**, 1, 170–177
 compound, 22, 172
 EBNF for, 170, 216, 228
 empty, 34, 44, 170
 part
 EBNF for, 170, 215, 228
 syntax diagram for, 22
- separators**, 7, 34
- sequence**, EBNF for, 172, 216, 228
- simple or structured**, 28
- syntax diagram** for, 29, 238
- Static variables**, 94, 145
- Stepwise refinement**, for programming, 81, 242–245
- String**
 constants, 12–13, 150–151
 construction, 209
 element, EBNF for, 151, 220, 228
 parameters, 117
 types, 63, 155, 156
 and compatibility, 159
 write, 135, 137, 198–199
(see also Character strings)
- Structured**
 programming, 81
 statements, 146, 172–177
 EBNF for, 172, 217, 228
 type identifier, EBNF for, 155, 219, 228
 types, 14, 144, 155–159
 EBNF for, 155, 217, 228
 syntax diagram for, 56
 taxonomy of, 55, 210

- Subrange
 - data types, in type taxonomy, 15, 210
 - types, 53–54, 144, 155
 - and compatibility, 159
 - declaration of, 54
 - definition of, 15, 50, 143, 155
 - EBNF for, 154, 218, 228
 - syntax diagram for, 53
- Succ, 16, 18, 19, 51, 154, 194, 207, 211
- Successor, *see* Succ
- SummingTerms, program for, 41
- SumSeries, sample program for, 124–125
- Symbols
 - kinds of, 148–149
 - lexical, 148
 - separators, 150
 - (*see also* Separators)
- special
 - list of, 10, 212
 - EBNF for, 148
 - table of, 212
- Syntax diagrams, 3
 - collected, 230–239
- T**ag
 - field
 - EBNF for, 157, 218, 228
 - not allowed as actual
 - variable parameter, 163, 187
 - of variant record, 71, 144, 156–157
 - type, of variant record, 70
 - EBNF for, 157, 218, 228
- Teaching, Pascal as language for, 142
- Temperature conversion,
 - program for, 25–26
- Term, 31, 165–167
 - EBNF for, 165, 218, 228
 - syntax diagram for, 31, 233
- Terms, evaluation of, 31
- Text, type, 127, 159, 164
- Textfile input and output, 127–140, 194–199
- Textfiles, 25, 92–93, 128, 164
 - definition, 158
 - sample program using, 129–131
 - standard, 92
- Then, *see* If statement
- Threaten, and For statement, 175
- To, *see* For statement
- Transfer functions, predeclared, 193
- Traversals, of tree, 117, 118–119, 120–121
- True, as predefined constant
 - identifier, 16, 152, 154, 211
- Trunc, 18, 193, 207, 211
- Truncation, *see* Trunc
- Type
 - compatibility, 160
 - conversion, automatic, 8
 - definition, 24, 143, 152
 - EBNF for, 152, 215, 228
 - part
 - EBNF for, 152, 215, 228
 - example of, 159–160
 - syntax diagram for, 24
 - and scope, 5, 178
 - example of, 25–26, 159
 - EBNF for, 153, 217, 228
 - identifier, 24
 - EBNF for, 152, 219, 228
 - syntax diagram for, 231
 - syntax diagram 24, 236
 - taxonomy, 14, 210
 - values for variable, 143
- Types, 14–20, 50–101, 152–161
 - kinds of, 15, 143–145
 - predefined, 211
 - (*see also* Structured types, Pointer types, Simple types)
- Unary operators, 166
- Undefined variable, 160
- Unpack, 64, 192, 207, 211
- Unpacked
 - conformant array schema, EBNF for, 186, 216, 229
 - set constructor, 33, 77, 166
 - structured type, EBNF for, 155, 217, 229

- Unsigned
 - constant
 - EBNF for, 165, 218, 229
 - syntax diagram for, 31, 231
 - integer
 - ERNF for, 150, 220, 229
 - syntax diagram for, 12, 230
 - number
 - EBNF for, 150, 219, 229
 - syntax diagram for, 12, 231
 - real, EBNF for, 150, 220, 229
- Until, *see* Repeat statement
- Up–arrow, *see* Alternative symbols
- Upper–case, letters, 10, 19, 148, 153
- Value parameters, 107, 110, 113, 146
 - actual, 110, 187–188
 - formal, 110, 185
 - sample program using, 111
 - specification, EBNF for, 185, 216, 228
- Var
 - parameters, 107, 110, 185–186
 - (*see also* Variable parameters)
 - see* Variable declaration
- Variable
 - accessing operations, 209
 - declaration, 7, 25, 143, 145, 160
 - EBNF for, 161, 215, 229
 - part
 - EBNF for, 161, 215, 229
 - syntax diagram for, 25
 - and scope, 105, 178–179
 - example of, 162, 219, 229
 - EBNF for, 162, 219, 229
 - identifier
 - EBNF for, 161, 219, 229
 - syntax diagram for, 231
 - parameters, 107, 110, 185–187
 - specification, EBNF for, 185, 216, 229
 - sample program using, 111
 - read–only, 112
 - syntax diagram for, 30, 232
 - totally undefined, 161
 - undefined, 161
 - within activations, 179–180
- Variables, 161–164
 - buffer, 87–89, 163–164
 - component, 57, 65, 161–163
 - entire, 161
 - global to procedure, 105
 - identified, 94–95, 163
 - kinds of, 28, 161–164
 - local to procedure, 105
 - to represent data, 143
 - standard, 128, 211
- Variant
 - EBNF for, 157, 218, 229
 - part
 - EBNF for, 157, 218, 229
 - of record, 70, 72, 157, 163
 - syntax diagram, 70
 - records, 69–73, 144
 - and dynamic allocation, 99, 101, 191
 - examples of, 71–72, 158
 - selector, EBNF for, 157, 218, 229
 - syntax diagram, 70
- While statements, 35, 146, 173–174
 - EBNF for, 173, 217, 229
 - example of 36, 174
 - syntax diagram for, 35
- 'Whole number, 7
- With statements, 47, 73–75, 176–177
 - EBNF for, 176, 217, 229
 - syntax diagram for, 73
- Word symbols, 9, 148, 212
 - EBNF for, 148
 - (*see also* Reserved words)
- Write, 92, 135–139, 196, 207, 211
 - and buffer variable evaluation, 87, 88, 133, 191
 - and default file, 128, 194
 - examples, 138–139
 - formatted, 136–137, 190, 196–199
- parameter
 - EBNF for, 196, 219, 229
 - list
 - EBNF for, 196, 219, 229
 - syntax diagram for, 136, 234
- Writeln, 92, 135–139, 198
 - and default file, 128
 - and equivalent writes, 136, 198